



CAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.  
(British Museum.)

*(Frontispiece.)*

THE

322

# FIRST LATIN BOOK

*Shian*  
BY  
E. CUTLER SHEDD

NEW YORK  
WILLIAM BEVERLEY HARISON

1901

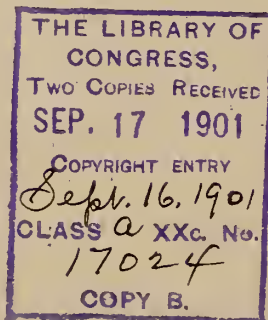
4



PA 2087  
S542  
1901

## Six Books of Cæsar in One Year.

In a pamphlet of this title the author has described the method which is embodied in this book, and also the result of a two years' test. In this test the class numbered fifteen, and each member completed the six books with comparative ease and without lack of thoroughness. Those pupils to whom Latin proved most difficult seemed to derive the greater benefit—indeed, judging by previous experience, several would have failed to pass in even the five books required of previous classes had it not been for the thorough drill given by this method, which enabled them to successfully complete six books.



01-24924

## PREFACE.

Five books of Caesar represent about one hundred and seventy duodecimo pages, and the pupil who spends eight months in reading them devotes an average of an hour or more to each page. The amount of Latin really mastered in this way is exceedingly meager when compared with the time expended, and the author's experience with his own classes was the primary cause of an investigation which has resulted in this book. Undertaken in a fragmentary way to meet immediate needs, it has slowly increased to its present proportions. It does not embody a single principle which has not been repeatedly tested in the class-room.

If we ask second-year pupils what they find to be their greatest obstacle in the way of reading Latin easily, almost invariably the reply is, "The vocabulary." If, during the first half of the school year, the pupil, beginning Latin, could learn the meanings of such a number of words as to render reference to the vocabulary in the second half year almost superfluous, it can readily be seen that a great advantage would be gained, especially if the words learned were those ordinarily used in second-year Latin. Practical experience has convinced the writer that the methods employed in this text-book secure both these points, without apparent extra effort on the part of the pupil.

A number of words appear printed in heavy type, each repeated about five times in the reading lessons which precede the special lists of these words. In all about two hundred and twenty words are introduced in this manner. Other words occur as seldom as possible. This method of introduction is used in the place of a Latin-English vocabulary.

The reading contains in all about eleven thousand words, and the written exercises about six thousand. Thus the words found in the special lists each occur from sixty to seventy times in the book. Naturally some occur more frequently than others, but scarcely more than six less than thirty or forty times. There are also lists of English words derived from the Latin, "Allied Words," which aid the memory when aid is most needed. The Latin words are thus so impressed upon the memory by repetition and the association of ideas that the pupil can scarcely choose but learn them. It is believed that this method has never before been applied so thoroughly and systematically.<sup>1</sup>

The saving of time thus secured permits the introduction of reading lessons of some length, and of sentences with a complex word order. The value of the latter as a preparation for classical Latin is obvious.

The isolated sentences are taken as far as possible from the text of Cæsar. Wherever practicable they give way to narratives from his writings, with text simplified, taken chiefly from the "Civil Wars," in order to impart variety and correct any tendency to depend upon memory alone in second-year reading. Those passages have been chosen

<sup>1</sup> To what extent this method affects the reading of second-year Latin may be seen from the following extract from Cæsar (B. G. II. 17), where the words in heavy type are among the words memorized in this First Latin Book:

*Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs, explorātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, qui locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciis Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuetūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnū numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū spatium ab-essent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentisque dīreptīs futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent.*

which seemed most full of interest as narratives. The text has been simplified only to the extent that the pupils' knowledge of vocabulary and construction demand in each reading lesson. The learner is thus gradually introduced to the Latin of Cæsar himself. Incidentally he is familiarized with Roman methods of warfare and history, in which he is aided by brief notes and carefully selected illustrations and maps.

In the treatment of rules and paradigms the following are the points chiefly considered :

(1) Terms and expressions unfamiliar to the pupil have been either eliminated or carefully explained when first introduced. Wherever possible English grammar has been used as a stepping-stone. The attempt has been made to approach difficult subjects, such as the subjunctive, from the standpoint of the learner.

(2) Rules and forms not needed for the reading of "The Gallic War" have either been excluded, or else but little emphasized. Hence the locative case, for instance, has been omitted, and the vocative made optional.

(3) All rules introduced are given in full. For example, all forms of indirect discourse are fully treated.

(4) Common constructions which are difficult are emphasized, and a constant drill in them is maintained throughout the reading and written exercises. Particular attention is called, in this connection, to the treatment of the sequence of tenses and of clauses of purpose and result in the subjunctive, and of indirect discourse.

(5) Constructions, like those of the gerundive, which pupils are likely to confuse, are introduced at widely separated intervals.

(6) The constructions which are most common are introduced first ; for example, the ablative of means and *qui* before *quis*.

(7) Similar forms are introduced in close sequence. All forms of the genitive in *iūs* are thus united.



(8) The work has been graded with much care. The introductory lessons are an example of this. In the latter part of the book frequent reading lessons are inserted to aid the pupil in assimilating what has been already learned, before taking up new points.

(9) The subject of verb analysis is given considerable attention in the belief that it greatly simplifies the mastering of the verb.

(10) The grouping of the words in the Latin Reading Lessons (believed to be a new feature in language teaching) has been suggested as a valuable aid in acquiring the habit of rapid reading.

Many cross references are given, to aid in uniting what logically belong together. The rules are reprinted at the rear of the book in a list, arranged systematically and with references to leading grammars, inserted for convenience and to facilitate the transition to second-year work.

For the sake of uniformity and simplicity great care has been taken that each style of type be used for a like purpose throughout the book. Latin words and phrases, for instance, appear in a uniform type and are thus immediately distinguishable from the English.

We are indebted to Mrs. M. J. Woodhull, of New York City, for the careful editing of the book, and also for her many valuable suggestions.

Thanks are also due to Mr. George M. Baker, recently instructor in the Lawrenceville Preparatory School, for the care he has exercised in marking the quantities, and to Professor Clifford P. Clark, of Fairmont College, for various useful suggestions. The author's greatest obligation, however, is to his pupils, (without whose cooperation little could have been accomplished,) especially to those of them to whom the study of Latin has frequently seemed dull and unprofitable.

E. CUTLER SHEDD.

WICHITA, July 15, 1901.



# CONTENTS.

---

CAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.....	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	PAGE
Map I. THE ROMAN DOMINIONS, 44 B.C.....	85
Map II. SOUTHEASTERN GAUL.....	86
Map III. THE SCENE OF CAESAR'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST POMPEY.....	87
Map IV. THE ROMAN PROVINCE OF AFRICA.....	204
Map V. THE REGION AROUND UTICA, 44 B.C.....	205
GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.....	I

## LESSON

I. Singular and Plural Nominative of First Declension.....	7
II. Accusative Case. Direct Object.....	9
III. First Declension. Indirect Object.....	11
IV. Order of Words. Apposition. Predicate Nouns.....	14
In with Ablative.	
V. Dative of the Possessor.....	18
VI. In with Accusative. Omission of Subject.....	20
First Word-list.	
VII. Second Declension. Vocative Case.....	23
VIII. Adjectives of First and Second Declensions. Predicate Adjectives.....	26
IX. Second Declension. Nouns in <b>-er</b> .....	29
X. The Verb <b>Sum</b> . Agreement of Verb with Subject.....	32
XI. <b>Sum</b> , <i>continued</i> . Ablative of Means or Instrument.....	34
XII. First Conjugation. Personal Endings.....	37
XIII. First Conjugation, <i>continued</i> . Verb Stems.....	41
XIV. Ablative of Manner. Endings.....	44
XV. <b>Hic</b> and <b>Ille</b> .....	46

LESSON	PAGE
XVI. <b>Is</b> .....	49
XVII. <b>Quī.</b> Agreement of Relative Pronouns.....	52
XVIII. <b>Quis ?</b> .....	55
XIX. Reading.....	58
XX. <b>Iste, Idem, Ipse</b> .....	60
XXI. <b>Quidam. Aliquis.</b> Irregular Adjectives.....	63
Word-list for Review .....	66
XXII. Third Declension. Mute Stems. "Allied Words" begin .....	67
XXIII. Third Declension. Mute Stems, <i>continued.</i> Ablative of Cause.....	70
XXIV. Third Declension. Liquid Stems.....	73
XXV. Third Declension. Stems in <b>i.</b> Descriptive, Ablative, or Genitive .....	76
XXVI. Third Declension. Stems in <b>i,</b> <i>continued.</i> Comple- mentary Infinitive.....	79
XXVII. Third Declension. Adjectives. Principal and Subor- dinate Clauses. Order of Words.....	82
XXVIII. Third Declension. Adjectives, <i>continued.</i> Hints for Reading.....	85
XXIX. Ablative of Time.....	91
XXX. Second Conjugation.....	93
XXXI. Second Conjugation, <i>continued.</i> Tense Signs.....	96
XXXII. Ablative of Specification.....	99
XXXIII. Fourth Declension.....	101
Word-list for Review.....	103
XXXIV. Third Conjugation.....	104
XXXV. Third Conjugation, <i>continued</i> .....	106
XXXVI. Reading .....	109
XXXVII. Comparing of Adjectives, Ablative with Comparatives..	111
XXXVIII. Comparing of Adjectives, <i>continued</i> .....	114
XXXIX. Comparing of Adjectives, <i>continued</i> .....	119
XL. Formation of Adverbs.....	122
XLI. Comparing of Adverbs.....	125
XLII. Reading .....	127
XLIII. Third Conjugation Verbs in <b>iō.</b> Accusative of Space and Time.....	129
XLIV. Fifth Declension.....	132
XLV. Subjunctive of Purpose .....	134

LESSON	PAGE
XLVI. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. Possessive Adjectives.....	138
Word-list for Review.....	141
XLVII. Reading.....	143
XLVIII. Numerals.....	145
XLIX. Numerals, <i>continued</i> .....	148
L. Subjunctive of Result.....	149
LI. The Verb <b>Possum</b> .....	151
LII. Reading.....	154
LIII. Fourth Conjugation.....	156
LIV. Review of the Four Conjugations.....	158
LV. The Infinitive. Indirect Statements.....	159
LVI. The Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statements....	163
LVII. Reading .. . . . .	165
LVIII. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.....	166
LIX. Participles. Accusative of Place Whither, Names of Towns .. . . . .	169
LX. Reading.....	173
LXI. Deponent Verbs. Ablative with some Deponents ....	174
LXII. Dative with some Intransitives.....	176
LXIII. The Irregular Verbs <b>Volō, Nōlō, Mālō</b> .....	178
LXIV. <b>Cum</b> . Temporal.....	179
LXV. Reading for Review.....	181
LXVI. Gerundive and Gerund.....	183
LXVII. Reading.....	185
LXVIII. Dative of End or Service. Dative with Compounds...	188
LXIX. Ablative Absolute.....	190
LXX. Primary and Secondary Tenses. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive. Full Rule for Sequence of Tenses.	193
LXXI. The Irregular Verb <b>Eō</b> . Ablative of Separation.....	196
LXXII. Subjunctive and Relative Clauses.....	198
LXXIII. The Irregular Verbs <b>Ferō</b> and <b>Fīō</b> . Hints for Reading.....	201
Word-list for Review.....	202
LXXIV. Reading....	206
LXXV. Indirect Questions. <b>Quam</b> with Superlative .....	210
LXXVI. Conditional Sentences.....	212
LXXVII. Commands and Appeals. The Three Forms of Indirect Discourse.....	215

LESSON		PAGE
LXXVIII.	The Periphrastic Conjugations.....	218
	Reading Lessons.....	221
	Tables of Declension and Conjugation.....	228
	General Vocabulary.....	259
	Vocabulary of Proper Names .....	279
	List of Rules, Arranged Systematically.....	285
	Index.....	291

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

---

Ab., Abl., Ablative.  
Ac., Acc., Accusative.  
Adj., Adjective.  
Adv., Adverb.  
Conj., Conjunction.  
Cp., Compare.  
D., Dat., Dative.  
Demon., Demonstrative.  
Dep., Deponent.  
F., Fem., Feminine.  
F. P., Future Perfect.  
Fut., Future.  
Fut. Perf., Future Perfect.  
G., Gen., Genitive.  
Imp., Imperf., Imperfect.  
Indef., Indefinite.

Interrog., Interrogative.  
M., Mas., Masculine.  
N., Neut., Neuter.  
N., Nom., Nominative.  
Perf., Perfect.  
Pers., Personal, Person.  
Plup., Pluperf., Pluperfect.  
Poss., Possessive.  
Prep., Preposition.  
Pres., Present.  
Rel., Relative.  
Sing., Singular.  
Subj., Subjunctive.  
Voc., Vocative.  
W., With.



For the purpose of ready reference, the rules will be found arranged systematically and with references to leading Latin grammars in a list following the vocabulary at end of book.

There is no English-Latin vocabulary, because every word, except proper names, used in the prose composition work are to be found either in previous word-lists or in the Latin reading exercise for the same lesson.

The vocabulary of proper names follows the main vocabulary.

Directions for the use of the "Allied Words" are given in paragraph 131.

For the list of abbreviations see page vii.

References throughout are to paragraphs.

## GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

**1. ALPHABET.** The **Latin Alphabet** is the same as the English, except that it has neither **j** nor **w**. **I** serves both as a **vowel** and as a **consonant**.

*a.* In English **j** has taken the place of **i-consonant**.

### **2. CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS.**

**1. Mutes.** **b, f, p, v**, lip sounds, called **labials**; **c, ch** (**5\***), **g, k, q(u)**, palate sounds, called **palatals**; **t, d**, teeth (or tongue) sounds, called **dentals** (or **linguals**).

**2. Liquids.** **l, m, n, r**.

**3. Double Consonants.** **x** = **cs** or **gs**; **z** = **ds**.

**3. Two Methods** of pronouncing Latin are used in America: the **Roman** and the **English**. In the **English** the sounds are as a rule the same as in **English**. This is now seldom used.

### **4. SOUNDS OF LETTERS. ROMAN METHOD.**

#### **I. VOWELS.**

The **vowels** are the same as in **English**. Each has **two** sounds, **long** and **short**.

#### LONG.

**ā** as in *āh*.  
**ē** as in *they*.  
**ī** as in *machine*.  
**ō** as in *home*.  
**ū** as *oo* in *tool*.

#### SHORT.

**a** as in *what*.  
**e** as in *set*.  
**i** as in *tin*.  
**o** as in *melody*.  
**u** as in *put*.

\* References throughout are to paragraphs.

a. When **qu** or **gu** precede a vowel, **u** is treated as a consonant.

This is also true of **u** in the forms **huic** (100\*) and **cui** (113\*) (Lessons XVI and XVIII).

## 2.

## DIPHTHONGS.

The **diphthongs** are **five**; **two** vowels combining with **a**, **two** with **e**, and **one** with **o**. They are **ae**, **au**, **ei**, **eu**, and **oe**.

**ae** as *ai* in *aisle*.

**eu** as *eu* in *feud*.

**au** as *ou* in *out*.

**oe** as *oi* in *soil*.

**ei** as *ei* in *freight*.

## 5.

## CONSONANTS.

The most of these are pronounced as in English. The following only need be noticed:

**c** is hard, as in *cat*.

**i**-consonant is like *y* in *yet*.

**ch** is hard, as in *Christian*.

**ph** is like *f*, or *ph* in *Philip*.

**g** is hard, as in *go*.

**v** is like *w* in *will*.

**6. SYLLABLES.** 1. A word has as many **syllables** as it has **vowels** and **diphthongs**: **ae-mu-lā-ti-ō**.

2. In dividing a word into syllables, a single consonant is joined to the following vowel: **ho-mi-nēs**.

When there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many as can be so pronounced are joined to the second vowel: **ē-gre-gi-us, se-cun-dus**.

a. But when the word is formed by the union of two or more words (that is, is a compound) the division must show the component parts: **ab-esse**.

3. The **last syllable** of a word is called the **ultima** (in Latin meaning *last*); the syllable preceding the ultima the **penult** (a word contracted from the Latin *paene*, *almost*, and *ultima*). That preceding the penult is called the **ante-penult**. (*ante* in Latin means *before*.)

\* References throughout are to paragraphs.

## 7. QUANTITY, OR LENGTH OF VOWELS.

1. **Vowels** are **long** (—) or **short** (—). In this book **long** vowels only are marked.

2. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**, and generally before **nt** and **nd**.

3. **Diphthongs** are **long**.

4. In compounds vowels representing diphthongs, and vowels resulting from contraction, are **long**:

**inīquus** (for **in-aequus**) ; **cōgo** (contracted from **co-agō**).

5. A **vowel** is **long** before **nf**, **ns** and **i-consonant**, and generally long before **gn**.

6. A **syllable**<sup>1</sup> is **long** if it contains a **long vowel** or a **diphthong**, or if it has a **short vowel** followed by **two consonants** (except a mute with **l** or **r**), or a double consonant.

## 8. ACCENT.

1. An **accented syllable** is one which is pronounced with greater **stress** of voice than other syllables in the same word.

2. In words of **two syllables**, the accent is upon the **first syllable** : **sil'-va**.

3. In words of more than two syllables, the accent is upon the **penult**, if that is **long**, otherwise upon the antepenult : **a-mī'-cus**.

4. If **-ne** [41] or **-que** [91] be added to a word, the accent falls upon the **last syllable** of the word : **laudat'-ne ? mensa'-que**.

9. **CASES**. The names of the cases are **Nominative**, **Genitive**, **Dative**, **Accusative**, **Ablative**, **Vocative**.

a. There is also a **Locative** case, which is not given in this book, as it rarely occurs in second-year Latin.

b. The meanings and uses of the cases will be given in succeeding lessons.

<sup>1</sup> To avoid confusion, the quantity of syllables is not indicated in this book.

**10. GENDER.**

1. There are three genders, **masculine**, **feminine** and **neuter**, as in English.

2. Unlike the English, the **gender** is usually determined by the **ending**.

Thus, **nouns** whose nominative singular ends in **a** are nearly always **feminine**.

*a.* Sometimes gender is determined by the **meaning**, as in English.

*b.* That a word in English is neuter, and hence referred to as "it", does not show that it is neuter in Latin. In Latin "field", "year", and "sword", for instance, are each referred to as "he"; "forest", "road", and "gate", as "she".

3. Names of **males**, **rivers**, **winds** and **months** are **masculine**.

4. Names of **females**, **countries**, **towns**, **islands** and **trees** are **feminine**.

5. **Indeclinable nouns** are **neuter**.

**11. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION.****I.****VOWELS.**

*ācriter, eagerly.*

*āla, wing.*

*āra, altar.*

*Cornēlia.*

*culpa, fault.*

*fortūna, chance.*

*ēdictum, proclamation.*

*ēmittō, I send out.*

*Ēpīrus.*

*alter, the other (of two).*

*inter, between.*

*tamen, yet.*

*Īdūs.*

*īnsula, island.*

*īra, anger.*

*avis, bird.*

*Asia.*

*dulcis, sweet.*

*ōlim, formerly, once.*

*ōrātiō, a speech.*

*ōrdō, rank, order.*

*modo, only.*

*Hector.*

*mercātor, merchant.*

*ūndecim, eleven.*

*ūtilis, useful.*

*ūva, grape.*



## 2.

## DIPHTHONGS.

Graecia.  
 aedificium, *edifice*.  
 tubæ, *trumpets*.  
 causa, *cause*.  
 gaudium, *delight*.  
 nauta, *sailor*.

Eurōpa.  
 Eurus.  
 Euphrātes.  
 coepī, *I began*.  
 Poenicus.  
 poena, *punishment*.

## 3.

## CONSONANTS.

Cicerō,  
 Caesar,  
 cīvis, *citizen*.  
 Charōn.  
 schola, *school*.  
 cachinnō, *I laugh aloud*.  
 genus, *race*.  
 grānum, *a grain*.  
 gustō, *I taste*.  
 iam, *already*.  
 iānua, *door*.  
 Iūra.  
 Polyphēmus,  
 elephantus, *elephant*.  
 Philippus.

sēdēs, *seat*.  
 rosa, *rose*.  
 Mūsa.  
 virgō, *virgin*.  
 via, *road*.  
 verbum, *word*.  
 lingua, *tongue*.  
 sanguis, *blood*.  
 anguis, *snake*.  
 quercus, *oak*.  
 quondam, *formerly*.  
 quī, *who*.  
 Suētōnius.  
 suāvis, *pleasant*.  
 suī, *of himself*.

## 4.

## SYLLABLES.

mā-tri-mo-ni-um, *marriage*.  
 lē-gā-ti-ō, *embassy*.  
 Hel-vē-ti-ī.  
 A-quī-tā-ni-a.  
 Ca-ta-man-to-loe-dēs.  
 auc-tō-ri-tās, *authority*.  
 pulchritūdō, *beauty*.  
 perspiciō, *I see through*.  
 invictus, *unconquered*.  
 expirō, *I breathe forth*.  
 dēpōnō, *I put down*.  
 cōnferō, *I collect*.  
 circumveniō, *I surround*.

## 5.

## ACCENT.

**Alexander.**ancilla, *maid-servant.*amīcitia, *friendship.*cōpia, *abundance.*melior, *better.*monumentum, *monument.*adulēscēns, *a youth.***Africānus.**beneficium, *a favor.***Carthāginiēnsis.**colloquium, *conversation.*nōbilitās, *nobility.*prōvincia, *province.*ostendō, *I show.*undique, *from all sides.*porta, *gate.*poenitentia, *penitence.*proelium, *battle.*

## LESSON I.

12.

### MODELS.

puella, *girl*.

puellae, *girls*.

rēgīna, *queen*.

rēgīnae, *queens*.

a. How does the **plural** of the Latin noun differ from the **singular**? Form the plural of the following nouns:

\* filia, *daughter*.

terra, *land*.

mēnsa, *table*.

via, *road*.

silva, *forest*.

13.

### EXAMPLES.

Via est longa, *The road is long*.

Viae sunt longae, *Roads are long*.

Singular and Plural  
Nominative of First  
Declension.

a. Notice that the **adjective** has a **plural** ending when it modifies a **noun** in the **plural**. If English were like Latin in this respect we would say "Roads are longs."

b. There is no article. **Via** may be translated either *a road* or *the road*; **viae**, *roads* or *the roads*.

14.

1. Terra est lāta.

2. Cōpiae sunt māgnae.

3. Ubi est mēnsa alta et longa?

4. Multae viae sunt longae.

5. Terrae sunt multae

6. Mēnsa est lāta.

7. Ubi est māgna mēnsa?

8. Estne <sup>1</sup> filia bona?

<sup>1</sup> -ne is the sign of a question, and cannot be translated.

9. **Mēnsae sunt altae.**
10. **Multae mēnsae sunt māgnae et altae.**
11. **Ubi sunt māgnae silvae?**
12. **Rēgīna est bona.**
13. **Puella et rēgīna <sup>1</sup> sunt bonae.**
14. **Viae sunt lātae.**
15. **Ubi est puella bona ?**

**15.** The words needed in the English-Latin exercises of the first six lessons will be found in the Latin-English exercises which immediately precede them.

1. The road is long.
2. Is the road long ? (14, note 1.)
3. Are the roads long ?
4. Are the tables long ?
5. Where are the wide tables ?
6. Where are the good girls ?
7. Many forests are large.
8. The table is large and high.

<sup>1</sup> Notice the compound subject.

## LESSON II.

### 16.

#### EXAMPLES.

Puella tubam portat,	<i>The girl is carrying (or, carries, or, does carry) a trumpet.</i>
Puella tubās portat,	<i>The girl is carrying trumpets.</i>
Puellae tubās portant,	<i>Girls are carrying (or, carry, or, do carry) trumpets.</i>
Rēgīna multās puellās amat,	<i>The queen loves (or, is loving, or, does love) many girls.</i>

*a.* In these sentences notice the **endings -am** and **-as**. How do they differ in meaning?

These are the **endings** of the **Accusative case**. Notice that in these sentences it denotes what is called in English grammar the **direct object** of the verb. To what case in English grammar does this use of the Accusative correspond?

*b.* How does the plural differ from the singular in the verbs given above? In the same way form the plurals of

**amat, loves.**

**laudat, praises.**

*c.* Notice that the adjective **multās** agrees with **puellās**, the noun which it modifies, just as the adjectives in Lesson I agree with the nouns which they modify.

### 17.

1. Puella aquam portat.
2. Terra silvās multās habet.
3. Rēgīna puellam laudat.
4. Ubi est praeda māgna?

5. Viae sunt multae et longae.
6. Rēgīna rosam habet.
7. Fīliae rosās habent.
8. Puellae aquam portant.
9. Ubi sunt cōpiae māgnae ?
10. Fīlia tubam habet.
11. Puella rēgīnam amat.
12. Rēgīna puellās bonās amat.
13. Terra māgna viās longās et lātās habet.
14. Fīliae bonae rēgīnam laudant.
15. Puellae multae fīliam bonam laudant.
16. Amatne rēgīna bona fīliās bonās ?
17. Puellae mēnsam altam habent.
18. Portantne puellae mēnsam lātā ?
19. Rēgīna bona fīliam bonam laudat.

18. (See 15.)

1. Is the girl carrying a table ?
2. The troops have much plunder.
3. The large country has large forests.
4. Where are the troops ?
5. The queen praises the girls.
6. The girls love the queen.
7. The queen has a large country.
8. The girl is carrying the roses and the trumpet.
9. Does the queen praise the girl ?



## LESSON III.

19.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

**Declension** is the changing of a Latin **noun** or **adjective** into the forms for the **different cases** (9), as **puella**, for instance, has already been changed into the three case-forms **puellam**, **puellae**, and **puellās**. (16.)

#### FIRST DECLENSION.

**silva**, *forest*.

##### SINGULAR.

NOMINATIVE	<b>silva</b>	<i>a forest</i>
GENITIVE	<b>silvae</b>	<i>of a forest</i>
DATIVE	<b>silvae</b>	<i>to or for a forest</i>
ACCUSATIVE	<b>silvam</b>	<i>a forest</i>
ABLATIVE	<b>silvā</b>	
VOCATIVE	<b>(silva)</b>	

##### PLURAL.

NOMINATIVE	<b>silvae</b>	<i>forests</i>
GENITIVE	<b>silvārum</b>	<i>of forests</i>
DATIVE	<b>silvīs</b>	<i>to or for forests</i>
ACCUSATIVE	<b>silvās</b>	<i>forests</i>
ABLATIVE	<b>silvīs</b>	
VOCATIVE	<b>(silvae)</b>	

*a.* What is the difference between the **nominative** and **ablative** singular?

*b.* The meanings of the ablative will be given later.

*c.* The **vocative** is the case of **address**.

d. The **stem** is that part of a word which remains **unchanged** throughout the **declension**. (*silv-* above.)

What are the stems of the following words?

*cōpiīs, viās, rēgīnae, filia, mēnsārum, puellīs, terram.*

Strictly speaking, the stem of the first declension ends in **a**, which is called the **stem vowel**. This **a**, however, has united by contraction with the vowel of the ending.

e. To learn the **meaning** of a word, notice the **stem**: To learn in what **case** a word is, notice the **ending**. The pupil who trains himself to divide Latin words into stems and endings has mastered one of the points necessary for easy reading.

#### f. DECLENSION BY ENDINGS.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Stem <i>silv</i>	NOM. -a	NOM. -ae
	GEN. -ae	GEN. -ārum
	DAT. -ae	DAT. -īs
	ACC. -am	ACC. -ās
	ABL. -ā	ABL. -īs
	VOC. -a	VOC. -ae

## 20.

### EXAMPLES.

*Rēgīna puellae rosam dat,* *The queen gives a rose to the girl.*

*Rosa puellae est grāta,* *The rose is acceptable to the girl.*

a. What is the case of *puellae* in these sentences? Indirect Object.

This use of the **Dative** is called the Dative of the **Indirect Object**, and is the same in meaning and use as the **indirect object** in **English**.

b. Notice the difference between the direct and the indirect objects in the first sentence. Be careful not to confuse these two "objects."

c. The second sentence illustrates one use of the **dative** with **adjectives**.

**21. RULE.**—The **nominative** is the case of the **subject**.

**22. RULE.**—The **direct object** of a verb is put in the **accusative**.

**23. RULE.**—The **indirect object** of a verb is put in the **dative**.

**24.**

1. *Silvae multae Galliae sunt m̄agnae.*
2. *Filia puellae rosam m̄agnam dat.*
3. *Rēgīna filiae longam mēnsam dat.*
4. *Estne rosa m̄agna puellae bonae grāta ?*
5. *Rēgīna cōpiās m̄agnās habet.*
6. *Rēgīna terrae puellīs rosās multās dat. Rosae puellīs sunt grātae.*
7. *Puella bonae rēgīnae longam mēnsam dat.*
8. *Habetne rēgīna lātam mēnsam?*
9. *Viae Galliae sunt longae.*
10. *Terrae Galliae silvās multās habent.*
11. *Rēgīna puellās laudat.*
12. *Rēgīna filiīs terrae praedam dat. Praeda rēgīnae filiīs grāta est.*
13. *Rēgīna puellās multās amat.*
14. *Puellae rēgīnae filiīs rosās multās et m̄agnās dant.*
15. *Ubi sunt mēnsae altae et lātae ?*

**25.** (See 15.)

1. The good girls give a large table to the queen.  
The table is acceptable to the queen.

2. The daughter of the queen has many large roses.  
The queen gives the roses of the daughter to the girls.

3. The countries of Gaul have many large forests and long roads.

4. The queen gives the plunder of the land to the troops.

5. Where are the countries of Gaul ?

6. Are the forests of the country large ?

## LESSON IV.

### 26.

### EXAMPLES.

#### **The queen gives a rose to the girl.**

In this sentence notice that we recognize the word “**queen**” as the **subject**, and “**rose**” as the **direct object** of the verb “gives” because the one precedes and the other follows the verb.

Thus the words in an English sentence follow a fixed order : **subject, verb, object.**

The same sentence in Latin reads :

Order of  
Words.

**Rēgīna puellae rosam dat.**

Notice that we recognize the word **rosam** as **direct object** because of its ending **-m**, and **puellae** as the **indirect object** because of its ending **-ae**.

If the words be rearranged,

**Rēgīna rosam puellae dat,**

**Rosam rēgīna puellae dat,**

the meaning remains unchanged, for **rosam**, so long as it keeps the ending **-m**, cannot be anything but the direct object, and **puellae**, so long as it keeps the ending **-ae**, will in this sentence remain the indirect object.

*a.* In a **declarative** Latin sentence the **subject** is usually placed **first**.

*b.* The verb (excepting **est** and **sunt**) nearly always comes last.

## 27.

## EXAMPLES.

Rēgīna Cornēliam, fīliam Galbae, laudat, *The queen praises Cornelia, the daughter of Galba.* Apposition.

Rēgīna Cornēliae, puellae, tubam dat, *The queen gives a trumpet to Cornelia, the girl.*

a. Notice that **fīliam** and **Cornēliam** both refer to the **same person** and are in the **same case**. This is also true of **Cornēliae** and **puellae**.

b. When a noun is joined to another noun as **fīliam** is to **Cornēliam**, or **puellae** to **Cornēliae**, it is said to be in **apposition** with it.

**28. RULE.**—**Appositives** agree in **case** with the nouns which they limit.

a. An appositive may often be best translated into English by a noun introduced by “as” or “of.” For example:

**Terra Gallia erat m̄agna**, *The land of Gaul was large.*

**Galba ad Galliam lēgātus Gallīs properat**, *Galba hastens to Gaul as an envoy to the Gauls.*

## 29.

## EXAMPLES.

**Cornēlia, puella, erat fīlia rēgīnae**, *Cornelia, the girl, was the daughter of the queen.*

a. In this sentence **fīlia**, which is in the predicate of the sentence, denotes the same person as **Cornēlia**, the subject. Nouns used in this way are called **predicate nouns**. Predicate Nouns.

b. How does a **predicate nominative** differ from an **appositive**?

Which is the predicate nominative, and which the appositive, in the following sentence?

**Cornēlia, fīlia Galbae, erat bona puella**, *Cornelia, the daughter of Galba, was a good girl.*

**30. RULE.**—A **predicate noun** agrees with the **subject** in **case**.



## 31.

## EXAMPLE.

Multae silvae sunt in terrā Galliā, *Many forests are in the land of Gaul.*

a. Notice that the preposition **in** is followed by the **Ab-lative** case. Hence **in** is said to **govern** the **Ablative**. *In with Ablative.*

## 32.

1. Puella est filia rēgīnae.
2. Māgna silva erat in terrā.
3. In terrīs Galliae erant longae et lātae viae.
4. Ubi est puella, filia Cornēliae? In silvā est filia Cornēliae.
5. Cornēlia, puella, filiae rēgīnae aquam dat.
6. Estne rosa in mēnsa?
7. Habetne terra Helvētia silvās? In Helvētiā, terrā Galliae, sunt multae et māgnae silvae.
8. Cornēliae tuba erat in altā mēnsā.
9. Erantne silvae Galliae multae et māgnae?
10. Gallia est māgna et lāta terra.
11. Puellae Cornēliam, Galbae bonam filiam, amant.
12. Fīliae Galbae Cornēliae puellae rosam māgnam dant.
13. Grātae sunt rēgīnae rosae.
14. Cōpiae terrae erant māgnae.
15. In māgnīs silvīs erant longae viae.
16. Praeda terrae est māgna.
17. Bonae puellae filiīs Galbae tubās dant.

**33.** (Words in parentheses are to be omitted in the Latin.)

1. Is Gaul a large land?
2. In the countries of Gaul are many troops.
3. In Helvetia, a land of Gaul, are large forests.



4. In the land of Gaul <sup>1</sup> is a large and wide forest.
5. The good girls give large roses to Cornelia, the daughter of the queen.
6. The roses are acceptable to Cornelia.
7. The queen praises the girls.
8. The troops of the queen are in the forest.
9. Are the roses upon the table ?
10. Where is the daughter of Galba ?
11. Galba loves (his) daughter.

<sup>1</sup> Not genitive.

## LESSON V.

### 34.

#### EXAMPLE.

**Terrae est m̄agna silva,** *There is a large forest to the land, that is, the land has a large forest.*

Observe that this sentence has the same meaning as if it were **Terra habet m̄agnam silvam.** The dative thus used is called the **Dative of the Possessor.**

**35. RULE.**—The **dative** is used with **sum** to denote the **possessor**, the **thing possessed** being the **subject**.

**Dative of the Possessor.**

### 36.

1. Rēgīna m̄agnam rosam habet.
2. Rēgīnae est rosa m̄agna.
3. Rēgīnae sunt rosae multae.
4. Tuba est puellae. Tuba puellae est grāta.
5. Cornēliae, Galbae filiae sunt rosae multae.
6. Aqua m̄agna est in viā.
7. Suntne multae rēgīnae bonae ?
8. Cornēliae fīliae bonae sunt tubae longae.
9. Galliae terrīs sunt silvae multae.
10. Ubi erat puella, Galbae fīlia bona ?
11. Praeda in silvā erat.
12. Cornēlia fīliās bonās habet. Cornēliae sunt filiae multae.
13. Galliae terrae m̄agnae et lātae erant silvae multae.
14. Rosa Cornēliae est in aquā.
15. Galba rēgīnae longam mēnsam dat.

16. Estne aqua alta ?

17. Amatne Galba filiās ?

18. Cornēlia, fīlia Galbae, māgnam rosam rēgīnae dat. Grāta rēgīnae est rosa Cornēliae. Cornēliae tubam longam rēgīna dat. Cornēliae est tuba longa.

19. Rēgīnae cōpiae erant māgnae.

37. (When possible, translate the following sentences in two or three ways.)

1. There is a large forest in the country of Helvetia (33. n. 1).

2. Cornelia has a rose.

3. Is Cornelia a good girl ?

4. Where was the plunder of the land of Helvetia ?

5. Has the queen a table ?

6. Has the girl, the daughter of the queen, many roses ?

7. The water in the road is deep.

## LESSON VI.

38.

EXAMPLE.

Galba in silvam hastam portat, *Galba carries a spear into the forest.*

a. Notice that in this sentence the preposition **in** means “into,” and governs the **accusative silvam**, which is not a **direct object**, as is **hastam**.

*In with  
Accusative.*

39.

EXAMPLES.

In silvam hastās portant, *They are carrying spears into the forest.*

In silvam properat, *He (or she) hurries into the forest.*

*Omission of  
Subject.*

a. Notice that there is **no subject** expressed in these sentences, but that the subjects “they” and “he” are included in the **verbs** and expressed in the **endings**.

b. The general sense of the sentence determines whether the subject expressed in the singular by the **ending** be “**he**,” “**she**,” or “**it**.”

40.

1. Galba in **terram** Galliam properat.
2. In **silvās** properant.
3. In **terram** multās hastās portant.
4. In **terrās** praedam māgnam portat.
5. Rōma multās **et** lātās **viās** habet.
6. In **terrā** Galliā **sunt** multae viae. **Terrīs** Galliae **sunt** longae viae. Galliae **suntne** multae silvae? Viae in **silvīs** terrae Galliae **sunt** longae sed nōn lātae.

7. Galba in **silvam** longās hastās portat.
8. Tuba filiae Galbae erat in altā mēnsā.
9. Galbae filiās laudant.
10. Puellae hastam **dat**. Nōn grāta puellae **est** hasta.
11. Puellae, filiae Cornēliae, **sunt** in Rōmā.
12. In Rōmam māgnam praedam multārum **terrārum** Galliae portant.
13. In portā erat rēgina bona.
14. In **terrā** Helvētiā **cōpiās habet**. In Galliam **cōpiae** properant.
15. In silvās terrārum Galliae properant.
16. Hasta longa **est** in **viā**.
17. Filia bona **est** rēginae.
18. Rōmae **viae sunt** lātae.
19. **Cōpiae** māгнаe **sunt** in terrā Galliā.
20. Ubi **est** aqua?
21. **Cōpiās** māgnās in Helvētiā nōn **habent**.

## 41.

## WORD-LIST.

<b>cōpia, cōpiae</b> , a supply (of anything); plural also troops.	<b>-ne</b> , sign of a question (8. 4).
<b>silva, silvae</b> , a forest.	<b>est</b> , is.
<b>terra, terrae</b> , a country, or land.	<b>sunt</b> , are.
<b>via, viae</b> , a road.	<b>dat</b> , he, she, or it gives, is giving, or <i>āoes</i> give.
<b>et</b> , and.	<b>habet</b> , he, she, or it has, is having, or <i>does</i> have.

42. (When possible, translate the following sentences in two or three ways.)

1. He hurries into the land of Helvetia.
2. In Gaul (there) are many troops. The troops have much plunder. They are carrying the plunder into the forests.
3. The girl, the daughter of Galba, is in the road.



4. They give the spear to the good girl, the daughter of Cornelia.

5. Has Galba a daughter? He has many daughters.

6. Where is Galba's spear?

7. The girls have trumpets.

8. Does the queen praise the girls?

## LESSON VII.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

**43.** The **stem** ends in **o**, which usually disappears by combination with the case-ending.

**44.** Nouns of the **second declension** ending in **-um** are **neuter**. Stem and Gender.

Others are masculine. (But see 10. 3 and 4.)

**45.**

**mūrus**, *wall*.

**oppidum**, *town*.

#### SINGULAR.

NOM.	mūrus	oppidum
GEN.	mūrī	oppidī
DAT.	mūrō	oppidō
ACC.	mūrum	oppidum
ABL.	mūrō	oppidō
VOC.	(mūre)	(oppidum)

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	mūrī	oppida
GEN.	mūrōrum	oppidōrum
DAT.	mūrīs	oppidīs
ACC.	mūrōs	oppida
ABL.	mūrīs	oppidīs
VOC.	(mūrī)	(oppida)

*a.* Nouns in **-us** of this declension have a special form in **e**, which forms their **vocative case**, or case of **address**.  
**Amīce**, *friend*.

*b.* The **vocative** of other nouns in all declensions is the **same** in form as the **nominative**.

Vocative Case.

c. How many cases in **mūrus** can you find which have the same ending?

d. Which cases of **oppidum** are alike in the singular? which in the plural?

e. DECLENSION BY ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.		NEUTER.
Stem <b>mūr</b>	NOM. <b>-us</b>	Stem <b>oppid</b>	NOM. <b>-um</b>
	GEN. <b>-ī</b>		GEN. <b>-ī</b>
	DAT. <b>-ō</b>		DAT. <b>-ō</b>
	ACC. <b>-um</b>		ACC. <b>-um</b>
	ABL. <b>-ō</b>		ABL. <b>-ō</b>
	VOC. <b>-e</b>		VOC. <b>-um</b>

PLURAL.

NOM.	<b>-ī</b>	NOM.	<b>-a</b>
GEN.	<b>-ōrum</b>	GEN.	<b>-ōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>-īs</b>	DAT.	<b>-īs</b>
ACC.	<b>-ōs</b>	ACC.	<b>-a</b>
ABL.	<b>-īs</b>	ABL.	<b>-īs</b>
VOC.	<b>-ī</b>	VOC.	<b>-a</b>

46.

1. Mārce, **amīce**, **quid** est in oppidō? In oppidō **amīcī** **lēgātī** tēla et **equōs** habent. Cōpia **equōrum** māgna est in oppidō. Māgnam cōpiam tēlōrum **lēgātī** populō dant. Māgnus est **numerus captīvōrum** in oppidō. Cōpiae oppidī sunt māgnae.

2. Estne Mārci **amīcus** **lēgātus**? Galba, **amīcus** Mārci et populī, est **lēgātus** in Rōmā, Ītalīae oppidō. Dōnasuntne tribūnīs, populī **lēgātīs**? **Lēgātus** tēlum, dōnum populī, habet. Tēla sunt Galbae, **lēgātō**.

3. Māgnus est **numerus** oppidōrum. **Lēgātī** oppidōrum sunt **captīvī**. Multī sunt **captīvī**. In silvīs sunt **equī captīvōrum**. **Captīvī** multa dōna **amīcīs** dant.

4. **Numerus** māgnus tēlōrum est Mārcō, tribūnō, **lēgātī**

**amicō.** Multa tēla tribūnus habet et populō oppidī dat. In oppidō sunt equī et tēla, dōna **amicōrum.** Māgnum **nume-  
rum equōrum** in silvā tribūnus habet. **Equōs** et tēla, dōna, Marcus **amicīs lēgātī** dat.

## 47.

## WORD-LIST.

**numerus, -ī,** *number.*

**amicus, -ī,** *friend.*

**captīvus, -ī,** *prisoner.*

**equus, -ī,** *horse.*

**lēgātus, -ī,** *an envoy, also an officer in the Roman army, a "legate".*

**in,** preposition ; with ablative, *in* or *on* ; with accusative, *into, against.*

**quid ?**, *what ?* Neuter nominative or accusative of interrogative pronoun **quis ?** (Lesson XVIII.)

## 48.

## HINTS FOR WRITING LATIN.

Every word except proper names used in the sentences to be turned into Latin has either been given in the vocabularies or else may be found in the Latin-English exercise for the same lesson. For proper names look in the Latin-English vocabulary. Do not look up the words in any English-Latin vocabulary. To do so may seem the quickest way for the first few lessons, but it teaches one very little Latin, and in the long run is sure to prove much the slowest method.

Study 26 again. Do not put down your words at random.

Words not to be rendered in Latin are placed in parentheses.

## 49.

1. The legates are friends of the captives.
  2. They give a large number of horses to (their) friends.
  3. Do they give the horses to the prisoners, the friends of the envoys ?
  4. Marcus, has the legate a horse ?
  5. The legate's friend has a horse in the road.
  6. Are (there) large forests in the land of Gaul ?
- (33. n. 1.)

## LESSON VIII.

### ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

50.

#### EXAMPLES.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<b>Bonus Galba,</b>	<b>Bona Cornēlia,</b>	<b>Bonum dōnum,</b>
<i>Good Galba.</i>	<i>Good Cornelia.</i>	<i>A good gift.</i>
NOM. Bonus Galba	Bona Cornēlia	Bonum dōnum
GEN. Boni Galbae	Bonae Cornēliae	Boni dōni
DAT. Bonō Galbae	Bonae Cornēliae	Bonō dōnō
ACC. Bonum Galbam	Bonam Cornēliam	Bonum dōnum
ABL. Bonō Galbā	Bonā Cornēliā	Bonō dōnō
Voc. (Bone Galba)	(Bona Cornēlia)	(Bonum dōnum)

*a.* Observe that **bonus** agrees in **gender** with the **noun** which it limits.

*b.* Adjectives of the **first** and **second declensions** have **three** sets of **terminations**, in order to agree with any noun in any case. The **masculine** is declined like **mūrus**, the **feminine** like **silva**, and the **neuter** like **oppidum**.

**51.** Learn the declension of **bonus** (474).

*a.* Decline **equus dēfessus**, *tired horse*, and **grātum dōnum**, *pleasing gift*.



## 52.

## EXAMPLES.

**Equus est māgnus,** *The horse is large.*

**Equi sunt māgnī,** *Horses are large.*

**Oppidum est parvum,** *The town is small.*

**Oppida sunt parva,** *The towns are small.*

**Galba est bonus,** *Galba is good.*

Predicate  
Adjectives.

Adjectives used after **est** and **sunt**, as in these sentences, are called **predicate adjectives**.

How do they differ from **predicate nouns**? (29.)

## 53.

1. **Dōna multa** bonae filiae Mārci sunt.

2. Via Galbae **dēfessī** filiis **dēfessīs** est **longa**.

3. **Dōnum boni** Mārci Galbae **bonō** est **grātum**.

4. Mārcus Galbae filius in **oppidum** tēla dōna bona **portat**.

5. Filiō **bonō** tribūnī equi sunt **grātī**.

6. In terrā sunt silvae **māgnae**. **Māgnus** est in terrā Galliā silvārum numerus. **Longae** viae sunt in silvis. **Nōn grāta** est tribūnīs **dēfessīs** lēgātōrum in silvam fuga. **Nōnne grāta** est populō terrae fuga in silvā captivōrum?

7. Mūrus **altus** est in silvā. **Māgnam** cōpiam tēlōrum equi et captivi in silvam **portant**. Filiis Mārci **grāta** in silvā sunt tēla, dōna amicōrum. **Dēfessī** sunt tribūnōrum captivi. Equi bonōrum lēgātōrum in **oppidum** captivōs **dēfessōs** **portant**.

8. **Altum** mūrum habetne **māgnum oppidum**? **Longus** et **altus** mūrus est **oppidō māgnō**. **Altō** et **longō** mūrō **oppidī** sunt **multae** portae.

## 54.

## WORD-LIST.

**altus, -a, -um,** *high, tall, deep.*

**dēfessus, -a, -um,** *weary, tired.*

**grātus, -a, -um,** *pleasing* (not used of persons).

**longus, -a, -um,** *long.*

**māgnus, -a, -um,** *large.*

**multus, -a, -um,** *much; plural, many.*

**oppidum, -ī, n.,** *town.*

**nōn,** *not.*

**portat,** *is carrying.*

**55.**

1. The tall captive is tired.
2. What is the horse carrying into the town?
3. The friends of the ambassador are in the town.
4. He gives a horse to (his) tired friend.
5. The legate has a large number of horses in the forest.
6. Galba, the friend of the captive, is in the road.
7. The road is long and the captives are tired.
8. The legate, the friend of the tribune, is not in the town.

## LESSON IX.

### 56. SECOND DECLENSION—CONTINUED.

**Ager**, m., *field*.    **Vir**, m., *man*.    **Puer**, m., *boy*.

#### SINGULAR.

NOM.	ager	vir	puer
GEN.	agrī	virī	puerī
DAT.	agrō	virō	puerō
ACC.	agrum	virum	puerum
ABL.	agrō	virō	puerō
VOC.	(ager)	(vir)	(puer)

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	agrī	virī	puerī
GEN.	agrōrum	virōrum	puerōrum
DAT.	agrīs	virīs	puerīs
ACC.	agrōs	virōs	puerōs
ABL.	agrīs	virīs	puerīs
VOC.	(agrī)	(virī)	(puerī)

*a.* How does the declension of **ager** differ from that of **puer**?

*b.* Most nouns and adjectives in **-er** of this declension are declined like **ager**.

### 57.

Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** shorten the genitive singular ending **-iī** to **-ī**. The **accent** remains **unchanged**.

**consilium**, gen. **consilī**, *advice, plan*.

**filius**, gen. **filī**, *son*.

**Pompeius**, gen. **Pompeī**, *Pompey*.

## 58.

1. Captivī aegrī nōn multum frūmentum habent.
2. **Liber** populus **liberam** terram habet.
3. Equī nostrī sunt in **agrīs**.
4. Equī nigrī aegrī Galbae frūmentum nōn habent.
5. Nōne est aeger Mārcī equus niger ?
6. Mūrī oppidī nostrī sunt altī.
7. Amicus noster est aeger.
8. Estne nigrō equō multum frūmentum magnō in **agrō** ?  
Frūmentum equōrum est in **agrīs**. Māgna cōpia frūmenti  
est in **agrō** aegrō equō.
9. In **conciliō virī cōnsilium** dant. Nōn grātum in **conci-**  
**liō** est **cōnsilium** nostrōrum lēgātōrum **liberīs virīs**. In  
nostrō **conciliō liberōrum virōrum cōnsilium** est bonum.
10. Estne filia bonī Galbae in **agrō** ? In mūrō est Cornē-  
lia, Galbae lēgātī filia.
11. Bonōrum **virōrum cōnsilium** est grātum. Grātum  
**cōnsilium** in oppidō nostrō bonus lēgātus populō dat.
12. Māgnam cōpiam frūmenti in terrā Galliae nigrī cap-  
tīvī in oppida portant. Multa tēla in terram Galliam lēgā-  
tus portat.
13. Māgnum est **concilium virōrum** Rōmae. Nōn māg-  
num est **concilium liberæ** Galliae.

## 59.

## WORD-LIST.

<b>ager, agrī, m.,</b> <i>field</i> ; plural, <i>the country</i> (as distinguish- ed from the town).	<b>cōnsilium, -ī,</b> <i>advice, plan,</i> <i>skill, prudence.</i>
<b>vir, virī, m.,</b> <i>man.</i>	<b>concilium, -ī,</b> <i>council.</i>
	<b>liber, libera, liberum,</b> <i>free ;</i> <i>plural, m., children.</i>

## 60.

1. The man's children are tired.
2. The horses are not in the town, but<sup>1</sup> in the  
country.

<sup>1</sup> sed.

3. He gives advice to the children.
4. In the council the advice of (his) friends was not acceptable to the envoy.
5. The captive does not have friends in the council of the legates.
6. Cornelia is the daughter (27) of Marcus the legate, the friend of the captives.
7. The roads in the forest are long.
8. The troops of the countries of Gaul are in the towns.

## LESSON X.

**61.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive of **sum** (486). **The Verb Sum.**

**62.** 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Sum, este, erās. 5. Eram, es, esse. 6. Erō, eritis. 7. Estis, erātis, eris.

**63.** In the preceding lessons verb-forms have been used in the **third** person. The forms of the verb **sum** show that there are **endings** to denote the **first** and **second** persons as well. **Agreement of Verb with Subject.**

a. There are a few such endings in the English language ; as, "thou lovest," "he loveth." The English commonly uses the pronoun with the verb, which is seldom done in Latin.

Is "thou," in "thou lovest," really necessary to complete the meaning?

**64.**

1. Tū, O puer, Galbae aegrī es filius.

2. Dēfessī erunt tuōrum amicōrum liberi.

3. Ibi nūntius tēla puerō dat.

4. Amicus eris puerō, bonī virī filiō.

5. In Galliā multa hiberna Sextius lēgātus habet. Nōn magna sunt hiberna, sed lēgātō erunt grāta.

6. Mārcus est nūntius. Mārcō est filia Cornēlia. Puer erit bonī Mārcī amicus. Mārcī amicus erō. Mārcī nūntī erimus amici. Ēstne bonum nostrum cōnsilium?

7. In Italiā frūmentum habet. Equī multī captivōrum in hiberna Sextī Mārcī filiī arma portant. In hibernīs erant multi virī, sed nōn captivī erant. Mārcus tribūnus in hiberna



Sexti nūntiōrum arma portat. Arma nūnti in hibernīs boni lēgātī erunt.

8. Cōpia māgna frūmentī dēfessō equō grāta erit. Puerī bonī, este amīcī aegrī equī.

9. Ibi arma nōn erunt.

10. Tū in māgnis hibernīs eris, sed arma tua in oppidō erunt.

11. Ibi oppidum nōn erit māgnum.

## 65.

## WORD LIST.

nūntius, -ī, *messenger*.

frūmentum, -ī, *grain, provisions*.

tēlum, -ī, *weapon* (especially a dart).

hiberna, -ōrum,<sup>1</sup> (plural only) the *winter quarters* for an army.

arma, -ōrum, (in plural only) *weapons* (of all kinds, both for attack and defence).

ibi, *in that place*. Adverb.

sed, *but*.

## 66.

1. They give a javelin to the boys, the friends of the messenger.

2. There<sup>2</sup> is a large supply of grain in the town, but there are no darts there.<sup>3</sup>

3. They are carrying much grain and many weapons into the winter camp.<sup>4</sup>

4. The winter camp of the legate is in the forest.

5. The man has a long javelin. Is he carrying the javelin into the winter camp?

6. The children of the messenger are giving (his) weapons to the captives.

<sup>1</sup> The full form *castra hiberna* is seldom used.

<sup>2</sup> Notice the two uses of the word "there" in English. The first of these is not found at all in Latin.

<sup>3</sup> For the adverb of place use *ibi*.

<sup>4</sup> Do not forget that this word is plural in Latin.

## LESSON XI.

### THE VERB SUM—CONTINUED.

**67.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative of **sum**. (486.)

**68.**

#### EXAMPLES.

**Frumentum equīs portātur**, *The grain is carried by horses.*

**Mārcus gladiō Galbam vulnerat**, *Marcus wounds Galba with a sword.* Ablative of Means or Instrument.

a. Notice that the **ablatives equīs** and **gladiō** tell us with what, or **by means of what**, some deed is accomplished.

**69. RULE.**—The **means** or **instrument** of an action is expressed by the **ablative**.

**70.**

1. **Liber vir captivus fuerat.**

2. **Māgna erit nova porta.**

3. **Filius nostri amīci gladiō cum multis virīs pūgnat.**

4. **Multōs Graecōs in bellō armīs Rōmānī vulnerant.**

5. **In terrā Galliā fuerant multae silvae. Māgnus fuit numerus silvārum et agrōrum māgnā in terrā Germāniā, sed pauca fuērunt oppida. Paucae et longae viae fuērunt māgnīs in silvis et agrīs Germāniae.**

6. **Oppidō fuerant mūrī et portae. Novum est oppidum et paucī sunt virī, sed altus est mūrus. Gladiōs multōs amīci novō tribūnō dant. In altō mūrō oppidi sunt virī.**

**Populō oppidi victōria in bellō erit grāta.**

7. **Hibernīs mūrī alti fuerant.**

8. **Gladium** novum filiō Mārcus dat. Gladiō virōs **pau-**  
**cōs** filiū Mārci vulnerat.

9. Cōnsilium novum lēgātōrum viris in conciliō nōn erit  
grātum.

10. Portae multae erunt longō in mūrō.

11. Equi māgnū in oppidum multum frūmentum portant.

12. Ibi māgnus numerus **gladiōrum** fuit in viā.

13. In **bellō** tēlis **paucōs**, sed **gladiīs** multōs, vulnerant.

14. **Populō** grātum dōnum dat.

15. Multum frūmentum equis in oppidum portat, et **populō**  
dat.

16. Dēfessī puerī arma **tribūnī** nōn portant.

17. In oppidō frūmentum nōn erit. In agris frūmentum  
multum erit, sed māgnae sunt silvae et longae sunt viae.

## 71.

## WORD-LIST.

**bellum**, -ī, *war*.

**gladius**, -ī, *sword*.

**populus**, -ī, *people*.

**paucī**, -ae, -a, *few*.

**pūgnat**, *is fighting*.

**tribūnus**, -ī, *tribune*, some-  
times *lieutenant*. There  
were six military tribunes  
in each legion (157) of the  
Roman army. Their du-  
ties varied as the general-  
in-chief saw fit.

72. Words will sometimes occur in these exercises which  
are not given as definitions in the vocabularies, but the pupil  
will always be able to find suitable words or expressions in  
the Latin vocabulary at his command.

1. In the forests and open country<sup>1</sup> of Gaul Cæsar  
and the Romans are fighting. The Romans are  
wounding many men with (their) weapons. The  
Gauls are wounding a few Romans by means of (their)  
swords and javelins. This<sup>2</sup> will be acceptable to the  
men in the council, but not to the people in the town.  
Many men in the town are friends of the Gauls.

<sup>1</sup> *ager*.

<sup>2</sup> *hōc* (neuter singular).

2. The Romans are fighting in the woods. The arms of the Romans are swords and javelins. The Gauls are wounding many Romans by means of (their) long javelins. They wound the horse of the tribune. But the legate is in the winter camp, and has many men and horses, and large supplies of grain. He hastens (39) with (his) troops into the woods. There (66, n. 2) they wound many of the Gauls by means of (their) javelins and swords.

## LESSON XII.

### FIRST CONJUGATION. *Ā* VERBS.

**amō** (stem **amā**), *love*.

Principal parts: **amō**, **amāre**, **amāvī**, **amātus**.

**73.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **amō**. (480.)

*a.* A **verb** in the **Active Voice** represents its **subject** as active (that is, usually, as **doing something**); for instance,

The man hits the boy.

*b.* A **verb** in the **Passive Voice** represents its **subject** as being **acted upon**; for instance,

The man is hit by the boy.

**74.** 1. Amat, amābat, amābit. 2. Amātur, amābātur, amābitur. 3. Amant, amantur, amābam. 4. Amābant, amābuntur, amābar. 5. Amābunt, amābantur, amā. 6. Amō, amāre, amārī. 7. Amor, amābāmur, amābāmus. 8. Amābō, amābor, amāmur. 9. Amāmus, amābimur, amāminī. 10. Amābimus, amāre.

**75.** Inflect, that is, repeat the tenses of, these verbs as you have inflected **amo**:

**nūntiō**, **nūntiāre**, **nūntiāvī**, **nūntiātus**, *to report or tell*.  
**portō**, **portāre**, **portāvī**, **portātus**, *to carry*.

*a.* To find the stem, drop **-re** of the infinitive.

## 76.

-ō or -m	-mus	-r	-mur	Personal Endings.
-s	-tis	-ris	-minī	
-t	-nt	-tur	-ntur	

These are called the **Personal Endings**. In what tenses are they to be found? What tenses and moods do not have them? Are they found in the tenses of **sum** as well as of **amō**? What do they mean?

## 77.

## EXAMPLES.

**Galba gladium portat,** *Galba is carrying a sword.* **Ablative of Agent.**

**Gladus ā Galbā portātur,** *A sword is being carried by Galba.*

**Mārcus gladiō vulnerātur,** *Marcus is wounded by means of a sword.*

**Virī ā lēgātō tubā vocābantur,** *The men were called by the legate by means of a trumpet.*

a. Notice that the **object** of the **active verb** in both Latin and English becomes the **subject** of the **passive**, while the **subject** (the **doer** or **agent**) of the **active** is in Latin expressed with the passive by the **ablative** with **ā** or **ab**, which corresponds to the preposition "by."

b. The last two sentences illustrate the difference between the **Ablative of Agent** and the **Ablative of Means**. The **Ablative of Agent** is used regarding **persons**, the **Ablative of Means** regarding **animals** or **things**.

**78. RULE.**—The **agent** with a **passive verb** is expressed by the **ablative** with **ā** or **ab**.

## 79.

1. Vir tēlum in hiberna portābit.
2. Tēlum in oppidum ā virō portābitur.
3. Galba Mārcum amicum amābat.
4. Mārcus ā Galbā amābātur.
5. Liberī, nostrum amicum amābitis.



6. Noster amicus **ā** liberis aegris **amābitur**.

7. Quid populō **ab** amicō nostrō **nūntiābitur**?

8. Frūmentum et tēla in oppidum **ā** captivō nigrō **portābuntur**.

9. **Ā** multis **amāmur**.

10. Cōnsilium nūnti **ā** Galbā **nūntiābitur**.

11. **Nūntiābitne** Galba in conciliō nūnti cōnsilium?

12. Galbae tēlum **ā** filiō in oppidum **portābātur**.

13. Filius Galbae arma in oppidum **portābat**.

14. Victōria populō **nūntiābitur**.

15. **Ā** liberis **amābiminī**.

16. Tribūnus **cum** viris **pūgnābit**. Tēlis et gladiis **pūgnant**. Tribūnus gladiō et tēlis **vulnerābitur**.

17. In hibernis tēlis, sed in agrō gladiis, tribūnus **cum** viris **pūgnābat**.

18. Rōmānōrum armis Graeci **vulnerābantur**. Graeci Rōmānōs nōn **amābant**.

19. Arma tribūnōrum **ā** dēfessis viris nōn **portābantur**.

20. Quis frūmentum in oppidum **portābit**? Aeger est tribūnus, sed quid filius **nūntiat**? **Nūntiat**, "**Ā** captivis frūmentum in oppidum **portābitur**."

## 80.

## WORD-LIST.

**amō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to like or love*.

**nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī -ātus, *to report or tell*.

**portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to carry*.

**pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to fight*. Followed by **cum**, *with*.

**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to wound*.

**ā** (before a consonant), **ab** (before a vowel), *by, from*.

**cum**, preposition followed by ablative, *together with*, sometimes *with*. Denoting accompaniment (not means).

## 81.

The children of the town are carrying the weapons of the lieutenant into the woods. This (72, n. 2) will

be told to the lieutenant by a boy and will not be pleasing (to him). He will tell the children,<sup>1</sup> “Boys, carry the weapons back again.”<sup>2</sup> But the children do not like the lieutenant, and do not carry back<sup>2</sup> the weapons, but hasten (39) into the winter camp and tell the captives, “The lieutenant has no weapons.” But the lieutenant tells the boy Marcus, the son<sup>3</sup> of Galba, “Marcus, hasten into the woods and carry (my) javelins into the winter camp.” Marcus will carry the javelins to<sup>4</sup> the lieutenant.

<sup>1</sup> Dative.<sup>2</sup> *rūrsus*.<sup>3</sup> *filius*.<sup>4</sup> *ad* (not dative).

## LESSON XIII.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.—CONTINUED.

**82.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **amō**. (480.)

*a.* The participle **amātus**, used in the compound forms of the passive, is declined like **bonus**, and is treated in all respects like an adjective.

**Cornēlia amāta est**, *Cornelia was loved.*

**Mārcus amātus est.**

**Frūmentum portātum est**, *Grain was carried.*

**Galba amātus est.**

**Amātī sunt**, *They were loved.*

**83.** Verbs have **three stems**, which are given in the Principal Parts: **Portō, portāre, portāvī**, Use of Principal Parts. **portātus**; **Dō, dare, dedī, datus.**

The **first** gives the stem of the **Present, Imperfect**, and **Future** tenses: **AMō Dō**. The **second** gives the **Present Infinitive**, by which the conjugation is distinguished: **amĀRE, dARE**. The **third** gives the stem of the **Perfect, Pluperfect**, and **Future Perfect Active**: **AMĀVī DEDī**. The **fourth** gives the stem of the **Perfect, Pluperfect** and **Future Perfect Passive**: **AMĀTus DATus**.

**84.** Look in a vocabulary as seldom as possible.

First translate the Latin as nearly in the order in which it comes as you can, giving to each word the meaning its ending requires. Do not try to make good English, but only to get the sense and to find the construction of each Latin word. Then go over the sentence

Hints for Reading.

again, and turn it into good English. This is especially necessary in a long sentence.

## 85.

1. Amice, esne aeger?

2. Cōpia māgna frūmentī dēfessis equīs fuerat in agrō.

3. Cum **studiō oppūgnātī sumus.**

4. In hiberna tribūnī arma et frūmentum multum ā captivīs portāta erant. **Barbarī virī pūgnīs** multis hiberna **oppūgnāvērunt.** Portās hibernōrum cum **studiō barbarī virī oppūgnāvērunt,** et multōs amīcōs tribūnī tēlis vulnerāvērunt. Multōs virōs tribūnus paucīs cum amīcis in **pūgnā** vulnerāvit.

5. Paucī virī cum māgnō **studiō labōrant.** **Barbarī virī nōn labōrant.** Bonus vir cum cōnsiliō et **studiō labōrat.** **Laborābisne, puer?**

6. Cum māgnō **studiō** populī **barbarī** terram lēgātus occupāvit. Māgnō cum **studiō** oppida **oppūgnābat.** Māgnīs **pūgnīs** paucae terrae occupātae sunt. Māgnae **pūgnae** erant, et virī multī tēlis vulnerāti sunt, sed pauca oppida **oppūgnāta sunt.**

7. Māgnō cum cōnsiliō ā Rōmānīs in bellō oppida **oppūgnābantur.** Multīs **pūgnīs** in Galliā ā Rōmānīs oppida occupāta sunt. Oppida multa in Galliā **oppūgnābuntur.** Cum **barbarīs** virīs **pūgnīs** multis Caesar pūgnābit.

8. Terrae novae ā virīs **barbarīs** in bellō māgnō cum **studiō** occupātae erant. Māgnō cum **studiō** populī **barbarī** terram occupābunt.

## 86.

## WORD-LIST.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to take possession of, to seize.*

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to attack.*

pūgna, -ae, *a fight.*

laborō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to work. Sometimes to have a hard time.*

barbarus, -a, -um, *uncivilized.*

studium, -ī, *eagerness.*

## 87.

1. In the woods, in a wide place upon the road, the messenger was attacked. A man wounded (his) horse with a javelin. The messenger fought with the men with (his) sword. But the men were many, and he was tired out by the fight. He told the men (81, n. 1), "I am the messenger of the tribune Sextius; why are you attacking me? Are you not his friends?" They told the messenger, "We are the friends of Sextius. We will be your friends."

2. The winter camp of the legate was in the forest. In the winter camp there (66, n. 2) were a great number of captives, and much grain, and many weapons and horses. A large number of Gauls attacked the troops of the legate. In the battle he was wounded with a sword by a man. The Gauls seized the winter camp and carried the grain and weapons into the forest.



## LESSON XIV.

88.

### EXAMPLES.

**Oppidum cum studiō oppūgnāvit,** *He attacked the town with eagerness (or eagerly).*

**Oppidum māgnō cum studiō oppūgnāvit,**

**Oppidum māgnō studiō oppūgnāvit,** Ablative of Manner.

*He attacked the town with great eagerness.*

**Cum studiō, māgnō cum studiō,** and **māgnō studiō** express the **manner** of the action.

**89. RULE.**—The **manner** of an action is expressed by the **ablative** with **cum**, unless an **adjective** is used with the **ablative**, when **cum** may be **omitted**.

**90.** To aid the pupil to acquire the habit of noticing the **endings**, they are in this lesson printed in **heavy faced type**.

### RŌMĀNĪ ATQUE GALLĪ.

**Māgnum oppidum Italiae, cum altīs et longīs mūrīs,** fuit Rōma. **Altae portae erant mūrīs.** In oppidum **Rōmam frūmentum ā virīs equīs portābātur,** nam multus in oppidō erat populus. **Multās terrās oppidaque māgnō cum cōsiliō et in bellō studiō populus Rōmānus occupāvit.** **Multi Rōmānī nōn labōrābant,** nam māgnus erat captivōrum numerus, **atque captivī labōrābant.**

In agrīs silvīsque Galliae erant Gallī, barbarī virī. **Bonam Italiae terram olim occupāvērunt.** Oppida oppūgnāvērunt. Cum Gallīs, Rōmānī māgnō studiō pūgnāvērunt, sed multī erant Gallī, et deinde superāvērunt. Populus



Rōmānus fugā servātus est. Sed Gallī celeriter ex-ivērunt, atque Rōmānī iterum oppidum Rōmam aedificāvērunt.

## 91.

## WORD-LIST.

mūrus, -ī, *wall*.

atque, *and*.

bonus, -a, -um, *good*.

-que, *and*. (8, 4.)

## 92.

In the land (of) Italy are great supplies of grain. The Roman people are skilful<sup>1</sup> in war. The cities have high walls. But we Gauls are many and will eagerly attack the forces of the Romans. The Romans will fight with eagerness, but we will seize many towns. We will seize the city Rome. We will carry many captives and weapons and much grain into the country (of) Gaul, This plan is acceptable to the men in the council of the Gauls.

<sup>1</sup> Cum cōnsiliō.

## LESSON XV.

93.

### HIC AND ILLE.

**hīc**, *this*.

**ille**, *that*.

#### SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
NOM.	hīc	haec	hōc		ille	illa	illud
GEN.	hūius	hūius	hūius		illius	illius	illius
DAT.	huic	huic	huic		illī	illī	illi
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hōc		illum	illam	illud
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc		illō	illā	illō

#### PLURAL.

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
NOM.	hī	hae	haec		illī	illae	illa
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum		illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	his	hīs	his		illis	illis	illis
ACC.	hōs	hās	haec		illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	his	hīs	his		illis	illis	illis

a. How do these forms differ from those of nouns of the first and second declensions?

b. **Hīc** refers to what is **near** to the **speaker** in place, time, or thought: **hīc gladius**, *this sword*.

c. **Ille** refers to what is **somewhat remote** from the **speaker** in place, time, or thought: **illud tēlum**, *that dart*.

d. **Ille**, agreeing with a noun sometimes means “*that well-known*,” or “*that renowned*.”

94.

#### EXAMPLES.

**Hīc puer est altus; illa puella est parva**, *This boy is tall; that girl is small*.

Lēgātus et captīvus sunt amīcī; ille est albus, hīc niger, *The lieutenant and the captive are friends; the former is white, the latter black.*

Hōc dōnum puellae est grātum, illud puerō, *This gift is pleasing to the girl, that one to the boy.*

a. Notice the meaning of **ille**, **hīc**: “*the former*,” “*the latter*,” in the second sentence.

b. An examination of the above shows that **hīc** and **ille** have two uses: (1) as **demonstrative adjectives**, in agreement with nouns, (2) as **demonstrative pronouns**, standing alone.

## 95.

1. Lēgātō studium illius tribūnī atque hūius nūntī grātum fuit.

2. Hīc mūrus paucās portās, ille multās, habet.

3. Illius Galbae gladium portābō.

4. Aedui et Sequani in terrā Galliā diū erant. Illi fuērunt Rōmānōrum amīcī, hī Gērmānōrum. Suntne illi nostri amīcī?

5. Secundā pūgnā barbarōs superat, et ibi hiberna **conlocābit**. Ubi hiberna **conlocābit**? nam nōn **idōneus locus** est. Estne **idōneus ille locus**? In illō **idōneō locō** hiberna lēgātus **conlocābit**. In hōc **locō** tribūnus multa tēla, sed paucōs gladiōs, habet. In hīs hibernīs amīcī lēgātī frumentum atque arma cum studiō **conlocāverint**.

6. Nōne tribūnus huic **filiō** Mārcī dēfessō grātum dōnum dabit? nam cum studiō labōrat. Illi hunc gladium, huic illud tēlum dabit. In hōc **locō** ā **filiō** tribūnī lēgātus gladiō vulnerātus erit.

## 96.

## WORD-LIST.

**locus**, -ī, plural, **locī** or **loca**, **idōneus**, -a, -um, *suitable*.

*a place.*

(Refers to place. For *time*,

**conlocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,

**secundus**, -a, -um, is usually used).

*to place or station.*

**filius**, -ī, *son*.

## 97.

1. The friends of this man are many, but of that (one), few.

2. These men do not fight with eagerness, but those are wounding many Romans with their swords.

3. This legate has a sword, and that (legate) a javelin.

4. A Gaul gave this tired captive a horse.

5. This place is not a suitable (one.)

6. The advice of this lieutenant will not be pleasing to the legates in the council.

## 98.

1. Cōnsilium nūnti in illō conciliō nūntiātur. Cōnsilium nōn tribūni sed nūnti lēgātō grātum erit.

2. Caesar cum Helvētiis in illō **idōneō locō** pūgnāvit. Pūgna māgna fuit sed Rōmāni Helvētiōs superāvērunt.

3. Frūmentum populō nōn fuerat.

4. Hī gladii novī illis virīs grātī erunt.

5. Vir in mūrō tēlum pōrtat.

6. **Fīliō idōneum** tēlum dat.

7. Tribūne, ā populō amāberis.

8. Lēgātus populī nōn fueram.

9. Frūmentum in hiberna portābit, sed arma in oppidō conlocābit. Hōc cōnsilium lēgātō novō nōn grātum est. In oppidō hiberna conlocābit.

## 99.

This boy is carrying a large sword. With the boy there are many children. He is telling the children (81, n. 1), "In yonder<sup>1</sup> woods there are many Gauls. I will fight with these men and will wound a large number with this sword. Messengers will tell this to the Roman legate. He will give (me) a horse and javelin. Then<sup>2</sup> I will be a lieutenant. Is not this a good plan?"

<sup>1</sup> ille.

<sup>2</sup> tum.

## LESSON XVI.

### 100. THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS.

*is, this, that; also he, she, it.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	cae	ea
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

*a.* **Is** as a pronoun means *he, she, it*. As a demonstrative adjective it is an **unemphatic** *this* or *that* in meaning, standing between **hic** and **ille**, but somewhat nearer to the latter.

### 101. TABLE OF USUAL MEANINGS.

*is, he.            ea, she.            id, it;*  
*also this, that.*  
*ēius,*  
*his, her, its.*  
*eōrum, eārum, eōrum,*  
*their,*  
*eum, him.        eam, her.        id, it;*  
*also this, that.*

### 102. EXAMPLES.

**Is vir cum studiō labōrat,** *This man labors with eagerness.*  
**Studium ēius virī laudāmus,** *We praise the eagerness of that man,*

**Amīcus ēius amātur, His friend is liked.**

**Is quī studium habet superābit, He who has eagerness will overcome.**

### 103.

1. Eī filiae Mārci dōna **dedistis**, atque grāta fuērunt haec dōna.

2. Eī cum studiō auxilium **dabunt**.

3. Lēgātus in idōneō locō hiberna conlocāverit. In hiberna equis multa tēla et māgnam cōpiam frūmenti portābit. Gallī haec hiberna oppugnābunt, sed nōn occupābunt.

4. Nōne pūgnae **sīgnum dabis**?

### II. CAESAR ET ARIOVISTUS.

Ariovistus erat Germānus. Gallōs facile **superāverat**. Caesar atque Rōmānī gladiis tēlisque cum Ariovistō pūgnāverunt, eumque in bellō **superāvērunt**. Māgna erat haec pūgna. Māgnū studium pūgnae erat Ariovistō. Multōs virōs atque equōs habuit et Gallōs multis pūgnis **superāverat**. Caesar castra cum mūrō portisque in locō idōneō prope eum conlocāvit, et in haec castra impedimenta portāvit. Germānōrum castra nōn mūrū habuērunt, nam barbarī erant. In pūgnā Germānis māgnū fuit studium, sed Rōmānis cōnsilium atque bona arma fuērunt. Deinde Rōmānī **superāvērunt**. In fugā per silvās multī Germānī, et mulierēs et liberī, interfectī sunt. Ariovistus ipse in Germāniam fūgit. **Ita** Germānī ā Rōmānis **superātī sunt**.

### 104

#### WORD-LIST.

**sīgnum, -ī**, *standard or ensign signal.*

**dō, dare, dedī, datus**, *to give.*

**superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *to surpass; hence, sometimes, to conquer.*

**ita**, *thus, in this way.*

### 105.

The lieutenant will give the signal for battle and the men will attack the Gauls with great eagerness.



There are a few Gauls in the road, and a great number in the woods. A few Romans will attack the former with javelins, but the latter will be attacked with swords. In a suitable place in the woods the Gauls have placed (their) children and baggage. The Romans who will fight in the road will easily overcome the Gauls there. Then <sup>1</sup> they will easily seize the baggage of the Gauls. Next <sup>2</sup> they will give help to (their) friends, who will attack those Gauls who are in the woods. Thus the Gauls will easily be conquered.

This is the plan of the lieutenant.

<sup>1</sup> tum.

<sup>2</sup> deinde.

## LESSON XVII.

106.

QUI.

*quī, who, which.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

*a.* **Quī** is called the **Relative Pronoun.**

**The Relative  
Pronoun.**

### 107. TABLE OF USUAL MEANINGS IN SINGULAR.

<i>quī, quae, who.</i>	<i>quod, which, that.</i>
<i>cūius,</i>	
<i>of whom, whose, of which.</i>	
<i>cui, to or for whom.</i>	<i>cui, to or for which.</i>
<i>quem, quam, whom.</i>	<i>quod, which, that.</i>

108.

EXAMPLES.

**Puer quī est bonus amātur,** *The boy who is good is liked.*

**Cōpiae quās habet sunt māgnae,** *The supplies which he has are large.*

**Puer cui dōnum dat est laetus,** *The boy to whom he gives the gift is glad.*

**Cōnsilium quod dat est bonum,** *The advice which he gives is good.* Agreement of Relative Pronoun.

a. Notice that the relative pronouns in these sentences have the **same gender** and **number** as the nouns to which they refer (called their **antecedents**): **quī** as **puer**, **māg-nae** as **cōpiae**, **cuī** as **puer**, **quod** as **cōnsilium**. But the **cases** are often **different**. **Quī** is the subject of **est**, **quās** the direct object of **habet**, **cuī** the indirect object of **dat**, and **quod** the direct object of **dat**.

**109. RULE.**—A **relative pronoun** agrees with its **antecedent** in **gender** and **number**, but its **case** depends upon the **construction of the clause** in which it stands.

### 110.

1. Vir bonus, cūius filius in hōc agrō labōrat, est in oppidō.
2. Numerus equōrum, qui in **castra** impedimenta portabunt, est māgnus.
3. Virī, quibus erant gladiī, paucī erant.
4. Cōnsilium nūntī populō nōn erit grātum.
5. Illī equī, quibus Mārcī filius in viā frūmentum portat, sunt nigri. Dēfessus est filius Marcī, quī in **castra** frumentum portat. Aeger est vir, cūius equī in viā sunt.
6. Nōn grāta filiae Galbae sunt dōna quae puer dat. Aeger est puer, qui haec dōna filiae dabat.
7. Eritne bonus vir quī dōna iīs puerīs dederit?
8. Tribūnus est hīc vir, cuī multa arma sunt, sed ā barbaris captivīs, quōs hī equī portābant, vulnerātus est.
9. Nōn bonum est cōnsilium virōrum quī pūgnant.

### 111.

#### WORD-LIST.

**castra, -ōrum** (in plural only), *camp*.

### 112.

1. The man whom you wounded is a messenger.
2. The men to whom you gave the swords which were on the wall are Gauls.

3. This is the lieutenant whose baggage was seized.
4. This is the boy to whom you gave the gift.
5. These children wounded the son of Marcus with this javelin, which you gave to (your) friend.
6. This man to whom you gave the long sword is not (your) friend.
7. The tired captive to whom you gave the horse is not a Gaul.
8. The weapons which you gave to the men are in the camp.

## LESSON XVIII.

113.

QUIS.

*quis, who? which? what?*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM. quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
GEN. cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC. quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
ABL. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

114.

EXAMPLES.

**Quis** castra oppugnābit? *Who will attack the camp?*

**Quis** vir erit nūntius? *What man will be a messenger?*

**Quid** amant Gallī? *What do the Gauls love?*

**Quae** oppida ā Rōmānīs occupāta sunt?

*What towns have been seized by the Romans?*

*a.* Notice that **quis** in the first sentence and **quid** in the third are **interrogative pronouns**, while **quis** in the second sentence and **quae** in the fourth are **interrogative adjectives**, and agree with their nouns like other adjectives.

*b.* **Quod** is used instead of **quid** as an interrogative adjective:

**Quod** oppidum ā Rōmānīs occupātum est?

115.

1. **Quibus** haec castra oppugnābuntur?

2. **Qui** viri hanc terram occupāverint?

3. Quid est in illō mūrō?
4. Quī vir nōn amat puerōs?
5. Cui dabit tribūnus hōc **novum** gladium?
6. Quibus virīs nōn erit **auxilium** amicōrum grātum?
7. Quōs agrōs habet ille vir?
8. Quem vulnerāvisti?
9. Quid est lēgātō in hibernīs?
10. Quam portam tribūnus oppugnābit?
11. A quō arma illa ibi sunt conlocāta?
12. Quibus **novīs** armīs illum virum lēgātus vulnerāvit?
13. A quibus Rōmānī superātī sunt?
14. Cūius arma ille puer habet?
15. In quō locō lēgātus **impedīmenta** conlocābit? In **novīs** hibernīs **impedīmenta** conlocat.
16. Quī bonus vir **auxilium** amicīs nōn dat?
17. Quōs virōs **auxiliō** filiōrum tribūnus vulnerāvit?
18. Cūius tribūnī in hibernīs sunt **impedīmenta**? In oppidum equīs **impedīmenta** portābuntur.
19. Quod **novum** cōsiliū nūntius dabit?

## 116.

## WORD-LIST.

**novus, -a, -um, new.** Hence **impedīmentum, -ī, a hindrance.** In plural, the also, *strange*. *baggage or baggage train of an army.*

**auxilium, -ī, aid or help.** Plural usually **auxiliaries, light-armed troops (slingers, bowmen, spearmen, etc.)**

## 117.

1. Upon what road were these wearied men attacked by the forces of the Gauls? With what arms did the Gauls fight? Whom did they wound with the javelins? Whose horse was wounded in the fight?



tacked by the Gauls? Is the winter camp located in a suitable place?

3. Is that tall man the lieutenant? Why is he loved by the men? The men are few, but they will fight very eagerly (with great eagerness).

4. What towns of the Gauls will they attack?

5. What is this man carrying?

6. With whose sword was that man wounded?

7. To whom will you give advice?

8. In what place shall we place the camp?

## LESSON XIX.

### READING LESSON.

#### 118.

#### PUER ET AMĪCUS.

Puer qui in agrō erat amicō ita dixit, “Quibus sunt illi equi qui in hōc agrō erant?”

“Equi sunt eōrum Rōmānōrum qui in silvā cum Gallis pūgnābant.” Ita amicus dixit.

“Cur illi qui cum Gallis pūgnāvērunt ex equis in silvam nōn ivērunt?”

“Olim ita ivērunt, sed Galli facile equōs vulnerābant, atque Rōmāni multī superāti sunt. Facile in agrō ex equis pūgnant, sed in silvis nōn ita est.”

“Illum signum quid est?”

“Signum in illis castris ā tribūnō datur. Nōn pūgnae signum dat, nam prope Galli nōn sunt.”

“Vidē! Multi viri in portā mūrisque castrōrum sunt. Id signum aliud, nōnne in silvā datur?”

“Ā Gallis id datur. Prope Galli sunt. Fuge!”

Sed pueri amicus ā Gallis interfectus est, atque puer ipse vulnerātus est.

#### 119.

Ariovistus was a German who greatly enjoyed a fight.<sup>1</sup> He seized the fields of the Sequani, who were Gauls, and conquered the Haedui in a great battle. The Haedui, who were friends of the Roman people,

<sup>1</sup> Compare 103, II.

told them,<sup>1</sup> “The Germans, who have conquered the Gauls, are seizing the land of Gaul. Are the Germans friends of the Roman people?” The Romans sent word<sup>2</sup> by messenger to Ariovistus, “Do not attack the Haedui.” This was not pleasing to Ariovistus. He sent word to the Romans, “Will you fight the Germans? They have never<sup>3</sup> been conquered.” But Caesar with his forces attacked the Germans and conquered Ariovistus.

<sup>1</sup> Singular.

<sup>2</sup> *nūntiāre*.

<sup>3</sup> *numquam*.

## LESSON XX.

### 120. THE DEMONSTRATIVES ISTE, IDEM, IPSE.

**idem**, *the same.*

#### SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	idem	eadem	idem
GEN.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	{ eīdem iīdem	eaedem	eadem
GEN.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	{ eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem
ACC.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL.	{ eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem

**ipse**, *self.*

#### SINGULAR.

#### PLURAL.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

**Iste**, *ista*, **istud**, *that, that of yours.*

**Iste** is declined like **ille**. (93.)

## 121.

## EXAMPLES.

Hic idem vir eum vulnerāvit, *This same man wounded him.*

Lēgātus ipse eum vulnerāvit, *The legate himself wounded him.*

Ipse virum vulnerāvistī, *You wounded the man yourself.*

Istum gladium eī dedī, *I gave him that sword of yours.*

a. **Idem** and **iste** can be used as either **demonstrative adjectives** or **demonstrative pronouns**. (Cp. 94, b.)

b. **Iste** is used in speaking of that which has some **relation** to the **person addressed**. It sometimes denotes contempt.

Do “of yours,” “of his,” sometimes suggest contempt in English?

c. **Ipse**, strictly speaking, like the English “*self*,” is not used alone, but in agreement with a noun or pronoun. Sometimes the noun or pronoun is understood from the verb ending, as in the third sentence.

## 122.

1. Quae nova arma barbari viri habent?
2. In quod oppidum sunt impedimenta portata?
3. Quis bellō Gallōs superāvit?
4. Ad eandem portam properāvērunt.
5. Hōc est istum gladium quō ipse vulnerātus es.
6. Tēlum atque equus sunt dōna eiusdem viri. Isti puerō haec dōna ipse dedit.
7. Tribūnus ipse lēgātum ipsum vulnerāvit.
8. Cui lēgātō grāta erat nūntiōrum fuga?
9. In quā terrā sunt silvae?
10. In agris cum studiō labōrābitis.
11. Eadem castra cum cōpiis lēgātī occupāvērunt.
12. In conciliō ipsō Gallōrum ille hōc cōnsilium lēgātis ipsis nūntiāvit.
13. In bellō quod auxilium ā tribūnis lēgātō datur? Grātum auxilium gladiis in pūgnā tribūni lēgātō dant.

**123.**

1. To whom does that sword belong ?
2. Are these the same men ?
3. You yourself gave the signal of battle, and with a few men attacked the tribune himself.
4. These Gauls attacked the gate<sup>1</sup> of the camp itself.
5. That captive of yours is not at work.
6. The legates placed the camps in the same place.
7. The messenger himself, the friend of the tribune, was wounded by the latter's captive.
8. What weapons do the men have ?

<sup>1</sup> porta.



## LESSON XXI.

### 124. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

**quīdam**, *a, a certain (person or thing).*

#### SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
GEN.	cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
DAT.	cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

**aliquis**, *some, any (person or thing).*

#### SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
GEN.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
DAT.	alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. Is the **quis** of this compound declined differently from the interrogative **quis**?

b. **Aliquid** is used as a noun, **aliquod** as an adjective.

**125.** I. The following adjectives, like the pronouns, end in **-ius** in the genitive singular of all genders, and in **-ī** in the dative:

<b>alius, alia, aliud,</b> <i>another.</i>	<b>tōtus, -a, -um,</b> <i>whole.</i>
<b>nūllus, -a, -um,</b> <i>no one,</i>	<b>ūllus, -a, -um,</b> <i>any.</i>
<i>none, no.</i>	<b>ūnus, -a, -um,</b> <i>one, alone.</i>
<b>sōlus, -a, -um,</b> <i>alone, sole.</i>	

**alter, altera, alterum,** *the other of two.*

**neuter, neutra, neutrum,** *neither of two.*

**uter, utra, utrum,** *which of two?*

**uterque, utraque, utrumque,** *each of two, both.*

## II. DECLENSION.

### SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	<b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud</b>
GEN.	<b>aliūs</b>	<b>aliūs</b>	<b>aliūs</b>
DAT.	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>
ACC.	<b>aliūm</b>	<b>aliām</b>	<b>aliud</b>
ABL.	<b>aliō</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliō</b>
VOC.	<b>(alius)</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud)</b>

The plural is regular.

## 126.

### TABLE OF MEANINGS.

**alius . . . alius,** *one, . . . another.*

**alius . . . aliud,** *one one thing . . . another another.*

**alter . . . alter,** *the one, the other.*

**127.** 1. Multī erant nūntiī, atque eōrum alius aliud nūntiābat.

2. Aliī ad portam castrōrum, aliī ad impedimenta, properāvērunt.

3. Neutra hiberna in locō idōneō ā lēgātīs conlocāta sunt.

4. Aliī tēlum, aliī gladium dabis.

5. Alterī hīc equus, alterī ille datus est.

6. Sī utrōque lēgātō oppidum occupātum erit, neutri oppidī populus frūmentum dabit.

7. Multī cōnsilia Galbae lēgātō nūntiābant, sed cōnsilium istius nūntī sōlius fuit grātum. Nūllī cōnsilia bona aliī nūntiī nūntiāvērunt.

8. Tōtī conciliō hōc cōnsilium est grātum, sed illud nūllīs.

9. Alia hiberna in aliīs locīs Caesar habet, sed in his sōlis sunt māgnae cōpiae.

10. Aliquis tribūnus hīs virīs quōsdam captivōs dedit.

11. Cū meum gladium dedisti? Cūdam puerō dedi.

## 128.

1. Some attacked the gate,<sup>1</sup> others the wall.

2. Some messengers announce one (thing), others another. (Express in four words.)

3. Certain (men) seized all the grain in the city.

4. To neither of these children has any one given any gift. (94, sentence 3.)

5. One attacked the camp, the other the town. Both were wounded.

6. He gave javelins to many men, but he gave a sword to one man only.

7. Some men attacked the winter camp in one place, some in another.

8. Both are captives: one of the legate, the other of the tribunes' friend.

<sup>1</sup> porta.

## 129.

## WORD-LIST FOR REVIEW.

cōpia	auxilium	amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	
pūgna	bellum	conlocō	“ “ “
silva	concilium	labōrō	“ “ “
terra	cōnsilium	nūntiō	“ “ “
via	frūmentum	occupō	“ “ “
	impedimentum	oppūgnō	“ “ “
amicus	oppidum	portō	“ “ “
captivus	sīgnum	pūgnō	“ “ “
equus	studium	superō	“ “ “
filius	tēlum	vulnerō	“ “ “
gladius			
lēgātus	altus, -a, -um	dō, dare, dedi, datus	
locus	barbarus, -a, -um		
mūrus	bonus, -a, -um	-ne	
numerus	dēfessus, -a, -um	et, atque, -que	
nūntius	grātus, -a, -um	in	
populus	idōneus, -a, -um	ā, ab	
tribūnus	liber, -a, -um	cum	
	longus, -a, -um	nōn	
ager	māgnus, -a, -um	ibi	arma
vir	multus, -a, -um	sed	castra
	novus, -a, -um		hīberna
	pauci -ae, -a		

Mark the words whose meanings you do not recollect, and pay especial attention to them.

## LESSON XXII.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

**130.** The stem ends in a consonant (either a mute or a liquid (2)) or in *i*.

#### MUTE STEMS.

<b>Prīnceps</b> , M., <i>chief.</i>	<b>Facultās</b> , F., <i>resources.</i>	<b>Dux</b> , M., <i>leader.</i>	<b>Caput</b> , N., <i>head.</i>
Stem <b>prīncip-</b>	St. <b>facultāt-</b>	St. <b>duc-</b> (2, 3)	St. <b>capit-</b>

#### SINGULAR.

NOM. <b>prīnceps</b>	<b>facultās</b>	<b>dux</b>	<b>caput</b>
GEN. <b>prīncipis</b>	<b>facultātis</b>	<b>ducis</b>	<b>capitis</b>
DAT. <b>prīncipī</b>	<b>facultātī</b>	<b>ducī</b>	<b>capitī</b>
ACC. <b>prīncipem</b>	<b>facultātem</b>	<b>ducem</b>	<b>caput</b>
ABL. <b>prīncipe</b>	<b>facultāte</b>	<b>duce</b>	<b>capite</b>
VOC. ( <b>prīnceps</b> )	( <b>facultās</b> )	( <b>dux</b> )	( <b>caput</b> )

#### PLURAL.

NOM. <b>prīncipēs</b>	<b>facultātēs</b>	<b>ducēs</b>	<b>capita</b>
GEN. <b>prīncipum</b>	<b>facultātum</b>	<b>ducum</b>	<b>capitum</b>
DAT. <b>prīncipibus</b>	<b>facultātibus</b>	<b>ducibus</b>	<b>capitibus</b>
ACC. <b>prīncipēs</b>	<b>facultātēs</b>	<b>ducēs</b>	<b>capita</b>
ABL. <b>prīncipibus</b>	<b>facultātibus</b>	<b>ducibus</b>	<b>capitibus</b>
VOC. ( <b>prīncipēs</b> )	( <b>facultātēs</b> )	( <b>ducēs</b> )	( <b>capita</b> )

*a.* To find the stem, drop the ending of the genitive singular.

*b.* Observe that the last vowel in the stem is sometimes changed in forming the nominative. No rule can be given for this change.

c. Notice that **neuters** have the **accusative** and **nominative alike**. Is this true of neuter nouns in the second declension?

d. Decline also **rēx**, **rēgis**, m., *king*; **lapis**, **lapidis**, m., *stone*; **eques**, **equitis**, m., *horseman*; **comes**, **comitis**, m., *companion*; **pāx**, **pācis**, f., *peace*.

e. Decline together **ille prīnceps**, **mīles bonus**, **id caput**.

## 131.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Some of the words in the following list have come directly from Latin words. Some come from the Latin through the French in the lists given later.

As far as possible analyze the English word, removing prefixes or endings and noting their meanings. Then find the allied Latin word, which should be one of those already memorized. Then give the meaning, (1) of the Latin word, (2) of the English word.

Agriculture	Bellicose	Territory	Unpopular
Amicable	Multiform	Studious	

## 132.

## LICINIUS ATQUE CLAUDIUS.

Olim Licinius, quī māgnus erat **prīnceps**, oppidum oppugnābat. Multī **mīlitēs**, **peditēs** **equitēs**que, eī erant. In eō oppidō fuit Claudius, **rēx**, cum populō,—virīs, mulieribus, liberisque. Diū hōc oppidum, in quō Claudius fuit **rēx**, ille **prīnceps** cum **mīlitibus** occupāre **temptābat**, nam in eō fuit māgna praeda, et arma et frūmentum. Sed cum virtūte **mīlitēs** oppidī prō mulieribus liberisque pugnābant. Portam oppidī māgnō studiō **peditibus** Licinius occupāre **temptāvit**. In mūrō tēlis **rēx** atque **mīlitēs** oppidī pugnāvērunt. Deinde signum datum est atque subitō eōs **peditēs** **prīncipis** Licinī quī in portā pugnābant **mīlitēs** Claudī superāre **temptāvērunt**. Multōs **mīlitēs** vulnerāvērunt, atque paucī interfectī sunt. Multī **peditēs** Licinī, dēfessī, superābantur. Id **prīncipī** **equitum** nūntiātum est, atque cum



**equitibus** auxilium Liciniō dedit. Diū fortiter cum Claudiō pūgnābant. Licinī equus niger vulnerātus est, sed ā **prīncipe equitum** alius equus ei datus est. Claudium rēgem Licinius **prīnceps** vīdit, et eum tēlō vulnerāre **temptāvit**. Claudius gladiō caput Licinī vulnerāvit. Tum victōria erat rēgi, nam Licinī **mīlitēs** fugā sē servāre **temptāvērunt**. Licinius ipse paucis **equitibus** in silvam portātus est, et ita servātus est.

## 133.

## WORD-LIST.

mīles, mīlitis, m., <i>soldier</i> .	prīnceps, prīncipis, m., <i>a</i>
eques, equitis, m., <i>horse-</i>	<i>leader, chief</i> .
<i>man</i> .	temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
pedes, peditis, m., <i>foot-</i>	<i>to try</i> .
<i>soldier</i> .	

## 134.

Then (99, N. 2) Claudius, rejoicing,<sup>1</sup> with a few horsemen hastily<sup>2</sup> tried to seize the baggage of the soldiers of Licinius. But at the place where<sup>3</sup> the baggage had been placed there were a few foot-soldiers of Licinius. Their leader saw Claudius and said to the soldiers, "That man is a chief, for he has a good horse and good weapons. I will give many gifts to the man who will attack and wound him." He gave the signal of battle. They eagerly attacked Claudius and his horsemen.

<sup>1</sup> laetus, -a, -um.<sup>2</sup> celeriter.<sup>3</sup> ubi.

## LESSON XXIII.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

135.

MUTE STEMS.—*Continued.*

**mīles**, m., *soldier*.

**virtūs**, f.;  
*manliness.*

**pēs**, m., *foot*.

Stem **mīlit-**

St. **virtūt-**

St. **ped-**

#### SINGULAR.

NOM.	mīles	virtūs	pēs
GEN.	militis	virtūtis	pedis
DAT.	militī	virtūtī	pedī
ACC.	militem	virtutem	pedem
ABL.	milite	virtute	pede
VOC.	(mīles)	(virtūs)	(pēs)

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	militēs	virtūtēs	pedēs
GEN.	militum	virtutum	pedum
DAT.	militibus	virtutibus	pedibus
ACC.	militēs	virtūtēs	pedēs
ABL.	militibus	virtutibus	pedibus
VOC.	(militēs)	(virtūtēs)	(pedēs)

*a.* Decline also **obses**, **obsidis**, m., *hostage*; **pedes**, **peditis**, m., *foot-soldier*; **grex**, **gregis**, m., *flock, herd*; **cīvitās**, **cīvitātis**, f., *state (body of citizens)*.

*b.* Decline together **pēs dēfessus**; **ille obses**; **haec virtūs**.

## 136.

## EXAMPLES.

**Homō studiō laudātur**, *The man is praised on account of (because of) his eagerness.*

**Eques ā rēge virtūte laudābitur**, *The horseman will be praised by the king for his bravery.*

**Miles longō itinere est dēfessus**, *The soldier is tired with the long march.* **Ablative of cause.**

a. Notice that the **ablatives** **studiō**, **virtūte**, **itinere**, denote the **cause**.

b. Notice the number of expressions the English has to denote cause. Are there other expressions besides the three given here?

**137. RULE.** **Cause** may be expressed by the **ablative**.

a. **By what? Why? How? By whom?**

Can the **ablative** case answer all of these questions?

## 138.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Copious

Magnify

Novel

Paucity

Liberate

Multiple

Occupation

## 139.

1. **Quis illi militi virtūte gladium dabit? Gladius ei virtūte ab hōc principe dabātur.**

2. **Princeps virtūte et māgnā fortūnā quem vulnerābat? Equitem vulnerāvit, cūius equus frūmenti inopiā labōrābat.**

3. **Eis amicis Mārci quī māgnā virtūte pūgnant inopia frūmenti est.**

4. **Princeps quī bonā fortūnā pūgnāverat virtūte rēgem superābat.**

5. **Militēs quī erant in hāc parte mūri inopiā gladiōrum celeriter interfecti sunt.**

6. **In idōneō locō māgnam partem impedimentōrum conlocāverit.**

7. **Equi pedem vulnerāre temptābō.**

8. **Bonā fortūnā gladiō eius nōn vulnerābātur.**

9. **Inopiā** equōrum in hīs hibernis māgnam **partem** impedimentōrum conlocāverat.

10. Equī longā viā erunt dēfessī atque **pedēs** lapidibus vulnerābuntur.

11. Māgnā **fortūnā** militēs qui hanc **partem** castrōrum oppugnābant nōn vulnerābantur.

12. **Partī** dēfessōrum equitum frūmentum nōn erit.

13. Huic puerō nōn est bona **fortūna**.

14. **Virtūte** equitum hūius terrae māgnam **partem** occupāverās.

15. Equī frūmentī et aquae **inopiā** labōrant.

## 140.

## WORD-LIST.

**virtūs, virtūtis, f.,** *manliness, bravery.*

**pēs, pedis, m.,** *foot.*

**pars, partis, f.,** *part, hence region, place, direction.*

Declined like *hostis*, 147.

**inopia, inopiae,** *lack.*

**fortūna, -ae,** *luck, chance, sometimes fate.*

141. LICINIUS AND CLAUDIUS.—*Concluded.*

The footmen attacked the horsemen of Claudius. They tried to wound the horses with their javelins; then <sup>1</sup> with their swords attacked the men whose horses had been wounded.

By a strange chance a javelin wounded both <sup>2</sup> the foot of Claudius and (his) horse. The horsemen tried to help him, but they were few, and many footmen eagerly attacked them. Thus they were overcome. Then (99, N. 2) the footmen assaulted Claudius. "Give up (your) sword, for <sup>3</sup> you are a captive." "Never," <sup>4</sup> said <sup>5</sup> Claudius, "will I, who have overcome Licinius, be the captive of his footmen." He fought with great bravery with his sword, but they attacked him with javelins. Thus he was killed. <sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *deinde.*

<sup>2</sup> See *et* in vocabulary.

<sup>3</sup> *nam.*

<sup>4</sup> *numquam.*

<sup>5</sup> *dixit.*

<sup>6</sup> *interfectus est.*

## LESSON XXIV.

**142.**

### THIRD DECLENSION.

#### LIQUID STEMS.

<b>homō</b> , m., <i>man.</i>	<b>labor</b> , m., <i>labor.</i>	<b>pater</b> , m., <i>father.</i>	<b>exsul</b> , m. and f., <i>exile.</i>
Stem <b>homin-</b>	St. <b>labor-</b>	St. <b>patr-</b>	St. <b>exsul-</b>

#### SINGULAR.

NOM. <b>homō</b>	<b>labor</b>	<b>pater</b>	<b>exsul</b>
GEN. <b>hominis</b>	<b>labōris</b>	<b>patris</b>	<b>exsulis</b>
DAT. <b>hominī</b>	<b>labōrī</b>	<b>patrī</b>	<b>exsulī</b>
ACC. <b>hominem</b>	<b>labōrem</b>	<b>patrem</b>	<b>exsulem</b>
ABL. <b>homine</b>	<b>labōre</b>	<b>patre</b>	<b>exsule</b>
VOC. ( <b>homō</b> )	( <b>labor</b> )	( <b>pater</b> )	( <b>exsul</b> )

#### PLURAL.

NOM. <b>hominēs</b>	<b>labōrēs</b>	<b>patrēs</b>	<b>exsulēs</b>
GEN. <b>hominum</b>	<b>labōrum</b>	<b>patrum</b>	<b>exsulum</b>
DAT. <b>hominibus</b>	<b>labōribus</b>	<b>patribus</b>	<b>exsulibus</b>
ACC. <b>hominēs</b>	<b>labōrēs</b>	<b>patrēs</b>	<b>exsulēs</b>
ABL. <b>hominibus</b>	<b>labōribus</b>	<b>patribus</b>	<b>exsulibus</b>
VOC. ( <b>hominēs</b> )	( <b>labōrēs</b> )	( <b>patrēs</b> )	( <b>exsulēs</b> )

**lītus**, n.,  
*coast.*

Stem **lītor-**

**opus**, n.,  
*work.*

Stem **oper-**



## SINGULAR.

NOM.	litus	opus
GEN.	litoris	operis
DAT.	litori	operi
ACC.	litus	opus
ABL.	litore	opere
VOC.	(litus)	(opus)

## PLURAL.

NOM.	litora	opera
GEN.	litorum	operum
DAT.	litoribus	operibus
ACC.	litora	opera
ABL.	litoribus	operibus
VOC.	(litora)	(opera)

*a.* What is the ending of the Nominative and Accusative neuter plural? What is the ending in these cases of the neuter nouns of the second declension?

*b.* Decline also **flūmen**, **flūminis**, n., *river*; **agmen**, **agminis**, n., *a marching body of troops*; **tempus**, **temporis**, n., *time*; **regiō**, **regiōnis**, f., *region*; **frāter**, **frātris**, m., *brother*.

## 143.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Hibernate	Portable	Temptation
Location	Principal	Virility
Impediment	Renovate	

## 144.

## MILES ET TRIBŪNUS.

Oppidum oppūgnābātur. Aliquis miles cūius pēs vulnerātus erat ex pūgnā ab amicō portābātur. Eius caput lapis ex ballistā quae in mūrō oppidi erat abripit, sed hōc amicus nōn vidit. Eī tribūnus dixit, “Cūr militem qui interfectus est portās?” “Nōn interfectus est,” amicus dixit. “Pēs eius vulnerātus est.” “Stultissime!” tribūnus respondit, “caput eī nōn est.” Tum amicus hōc vidit. “Tribūne,”



dixit, “vērūm nūntiās. Nōn stultus tamen sum, nam hīc miles ipse mihi nūntiāvit, ‘Meum pedem tēlum vulnerāvit.’”

## HANNIBAL ET SCĪPIŌ.—I.

Diū Carthāgō in Āfricā māgnūm oppidum erat, atque multās terrās secundis bellis occupāverat. Rōma erat oppidum **ad flūmen** Tiberim atque multōs populōs Ītalīae Rōmānī superāverant. **Hominēs summō** studiō bellī erant.

In primō bellō cum **hominibus** Carthāginis Rōmānī paene superāti sunt, sed **summō** studiō cōsiliōque tandem victōria eīs fuit. Pater Hannibalīs, **homō summō** cōsiliō, quī Hamilcar appellātus est, diū in Siciliā cum Rōmānīs pūgnabat. Deinde in Hispāniā **proeliis** secundis barbarōs **hominēs** oppūgnāvit.

## 145.

## WORD-LIST.

<b>homō, hominis</b> , m. (and f.),	<b>flūmen, flūminis</b> , n., <i>river</i> .
<i>man</i> (sometimes <i>mankind</i> ).	<b>summus, -a, -um</b> , <i>greatest</i> ,
<b>annus, annī</b> , m., <i>year</i> .	<i>highest</i> .
<b>proelium, proelī</b> , <i>battle</i> .	<b>ad</b> , prep. with acc. <i>to, at</i> .

## 146.

## REGULUS.

The people of Rome were very skilful in war, and fought with the people of Carthage in many battles. In the first war with Carthage, Regulus, a Roman chief, with (his) soldiers was defeated in a battle at a place near Carthage. But after<sup>1</sup> four years the men of Carthage were defeated by the Romans in Sicily. Then the chiefs of Carthage said,<sup>2</sup> “Regulus, the captive Roman, shall be an envoy to Rome. Because he is a captive, peace (130. d) will be pleasing to him, for if<sup>3</sup> there be peace he will be free.”

<sup>1</sup> post.<sup>2</sup> dixerunt.<sup>3</sup> sī.

## LESSON XXV.

### THIRD DECLENSION.—CONTINUED.

147.

STEMS IN *i*.

<b>collis</b> , m., <i>hill</i> .	<b>hostis</b> , m., <i>enemy</i> .	<b>mare</b> , n., <i>sea</i> .
Stem <b>colli-</b>	St. <b>hosti-</b>	St. <b>mari-</b>

[SINGULAR.

NOM. <b>collis</b>	<b>hostis</b>	<b>mare</b>
GEN. <b>collis</b>	<b>hostis</b>	<b>maris</b>
DAT. <b>collī</b>	<b>hostī</b>	<b>marī</b>
ACC. <b>collem</b>	<b>hostem</b>	<b>mare</b>
ABL. <b>collī, -e</b>	<b>hoste</b>	<b>marī</b>
VOC. ( <b>collis</b> )	( <b>hostis</b> )	( <b>mare</b> )

PLURAL.

NOM. <b>collēs</b>	<b>hostēs</b>	<b>maria</b>
GEN. <b>collium</b>	<b>hostium</b>	
DAT. <b>collibus</b>	<b>hostibus</b>	<b>maribus</b>
ACC. <b>collīs, -ēs</b>	<b>hostīs, -ēs</b>	<b>maria</b>
ABL. <b>collibus</b>	<b>hostibus</b>	<b>maribus</b>
VOC. ( <b>collēs</b> )	( <b>hostēs</b> )	( <b>maria</b> )

*a.* How do the declensions of **collis** and **hostis** differ? The most common of the nouns declined like **collis** are **fīnis**, *end*; **īgnis**, *fire*; **cīvis**, *citizen*.

*b.* Nouns having **i-stems** are **marked** in the **vocabulary**, thus, **fīnis**, **-is** (**fīni-**).

*c.* Decline also **latus**, **lateris**, n., *side* (cp. **lātus**, **-a**, **-um**); **multitūdō**, **-inis**, f., *multitude*; **pars**, **partis** (**parti-**), f.,

*part; rūpēs, rūpis (rūpi-), f., rock, cliff; vallis, vallis (valli-), valley.*

## 148.

## EXAMPLES.

Mārcus mīles fuit māgnā virtūte, } *Marcus was a soldier*  
 Mārcus mīles fuit māgnae virtūtis, } *of great bravery.*  
 Ītalia est terra multīs urbibus, } *Italy is a land with*  
 Ītalia est terra multārum urbium, } *many cities.*

*a.* Notice that in these sentences the ablative or genitive is used with an adjective to **describe** Mārcus or Ītalia.

**149. RULE.** A person or thing may be **described** by the **ablative** or the **genitive** of a **noun**, if an **adjective** be used with the **noun**. Descriptive Ablative or Genitive.

*a.* The noun **must** be limited by an **adjective**. That is, it is incorrect to say in Latin, as we do in English, “a man of courage,” or “a man of wealth.” Some **adjective** must be used: “a man of great courage,” “of abundant wealth.”

## 150.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Altitude	Auxiliary	Depopulate	Innumerable
Armory	Bonus	Filial	Legation

## 151.

## HANNIBAL ET SCĪPIŌ.—II.

Scīpiō Rōmānus et Hannibal puerī **annīs**<sup>1</sup> paucis cum patribus fuērunt in proeliis, hīc in Ītaliā, ille in Hispāniā. Fuērunt summae virtūtis. Scīpiō, adulēscēns XVII **annōrum**, patrem in proeliō ad Ticīnum flūmen servāvit. Hannibal, adulēscēns nōn XX **annīs** cum patre oppida in Hispāniā oppugnāvit.

Multis cum hominibus, peditibus equitibusque, per Galliam, terram māgnis cum silvis flūminibusque altis ivit atque Rōmānōs in Ītaliā oppugnāvit. Cum patre Scīpiōnis ad flūmen Ticīnum pugnāvit. In proeliō ad locum quī Cannae appellātus est LXX milia militum māgnusque numerus prin-

<sup>1</sup> See 145.

cipum Rōmānōrum interfectī sunt. Tamen Rōmānī summa virtūte nōn superātī sunt.

Post **annōs** VIII Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis, ei auxilium dare temptābat, et multis cum hominibus per Galliam ad Ītaliā ivit. Prope flūmen Metaurum ā Romānīs interfectus est. Caput ēius ad Hannibalem portātus est. “O Carthāgō, tuam fortūnam videō!” dixit. Ei tum auxilium nōn erat. Scīpiō post **annōs** III Āfricā occupāre temptāvit. Hannibal ad Āfricā ivit atque in proeliō ad Zamā superātus est.

## 152.

REGULUS.—*Continued.*

But Regulus loved Rome, for he told the Romans, “The men of Carthage are weary of the war and have a great lack of resources. Peace (130, *d*) will be acceptable to them. Attack them zealously, for in this way they will be conquered.” His friends told him, “We will do this. But do not give yourself<sup>1</sup> up to the men of Carthage.” But he told them, “This advice is not good. I am a captive and the ambassador of the chiefs of Carthage. I will give myself<sup>2</sup> up to them, for (141, N. 3) a man of the greatest manliness will not be false<sup>3</sup> even<sup>4</sup> to (his) enemies.”

He went back to the city (153) Carthage, and was killed (141, N. 5) by the men of Carthage.

<sup>1</sup> tē.    <sup>2</sup> mē.    <sup>3</sup> falsus, -a, -um.    <sup>4</sup> etiam.

## LESSON XXVI.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

**153.**                      STEMS IN *i*.—*Continued.*

<b>mōns</b> , m., <i>mountain.</i>	<b>urbs</b> , f., <i>city.</i>	<b>nox</b> , f., <i>night.</i>
Stem <b>monti-</b>	<b>urbi-</b>	<b>nocti-</b> (cp. 2, 3)

#### SINGULAR.

NOM.	mōns	urbs	nox
GEN.	montis	urbis	noctis
DAT.	montī	urbī	noctī
ACC.	montem	urbem	noctem
ABL.	monte	urbe	nocte
VOC.	(mōns)	(urbs)	(nox)

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	montēs	urbēs	noctēs
GEN.	montium	urbium	noctium
DAT.	montibus	urbibus	noctibus
ACC.	montīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	noctīs, -ēs
ABL.	montibus	urbibus	noctibus
VOC.	(montēs)	(urbēs)	(noctēs)

*a.* Decline **cliēns**, **clientis**, m., *a dependent*; **arx**, **arcis**, f., *a citadel*.

*b.* Decline together **parva urbs**, *small city*; **animal māgnum**, *large animal*; **nigra nūbēs**, *black cloud*; **haec arx**, *this citadel*; **illud mare**, *that sea*.



**154. To i-stems belong :**

**Nouns in -is** and **-ēs** which have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, as **rūpēs**, **cīvis**.

**Neuters in -e, -al, -ar, as mare, animal.**

Most **nouns in -ns** and **-rs**, as **cliēns**, I-stems.  
**cohors**.

Many **monosyllables** in **s** or **x** following a consonant, as **mōns**, **arx**.

**155.****EXAMPLE.**

**Oppidum oppūgnāre temptāvit**, *He tried to take the town.*

a. In this sentence the **infinitive** is used as in English. This construction has been freely used in preceding exercises.

Complementary  
Infinitive.

The infinitive used thus (as complement), to complete the meaning of a verb, is called the **Complementary Infinitive**.

b. Its position is **immediately before** the verb. The pupil should train himself to group an infinitive which immediately precedes a finite verb with the verb, treating the two as nearly as possible as though they were a single word.

**156.****ALLIED WORDS.**

Magnate	Pedestrian	Prince	Viaduct
Pedal	Pugnacity	Sylvan	Captivity

**157.****PROELIUM CUM HELVĒTĪS.—Ī.**

Helvētīi, barbarī hominēs Galliae, terram Aeduōrum occupāre temptāvērunt. **Quoniam** haec terra est prope illam partem Galliae quae Prōvincia appellābātur, Caesar quī Prōvinciae erat princeps cum Helvētiīs pūgnāvit.

Diū Caesar eōs oppūgnāre nōn temptābat, tamen prope **agmen** Helvētiōrum **agmen** eiūs erat. Tandem ā Bibracte, māgnō oppidō Aeduōrum, nōn longē **agmina** ā-fuērunt.



Ad eum locum Caesar cum **legiōnibus** properāvit, nam ibi cōpia frūmenti erat. Id principibus Helvētiōrum nūntiātum est. Dixērunt, “Fuga nōne est? In **agmen legiōnum** eius properābimus. Facilis victōria militibus nostris erit.” Ad novissimum **agmen** Caesaris properāvērunt multōsque vulnerābant. Pauci interfecti sunt. Cōpiās Caesar in **collem** quī prope erat conlocāvit. In hōc locō **legiōnēs** IV, sed in summō **colle** II novās **legiōnēs** atque omnia auxilia impedimentaue conlocāvit.

Helvētīi celeriter **legiōnēs** quī in **colle** erant oppugnāvērunt. Rōmānī ē locō superiōre facile Helvētiōs perturbāvērunt; deinde gladiis militēs **legiōnum** eōs oppugnāvērunt. Tandem dēfessī Helvētīi ad altum **collem** quī nōn longē ab-erat sē recēpērunt. Ad hunc **collem** militēs Caesaris properābant.

## 158.

## WORD-LIST.

**legiō, legiōnis**, f., *a division of the Roman army, containing from 3000 to 6000 men.*

**agmen, agminis**, n., *army on the march, a marching column.*

**collis, collis**, m., *hill*.—**summus collis**, *top of a hill.*

**quoniam**, *because.*

## 159.

The Helvetians were a people who were eager for war, and very brave. Their land was not acceptable to them, because there were many high mountains in it. They attacked the peoples of Gaul and tried to seize their land. But the Haedui were friends of the Roman people, and told Caesar by messenger, “If (146, N. 3) you do not give (us) help we will be overcome by the Helvetians.” Because of this which the Haedui had told him Caesar with (his) legions gave help to the Gauls who were attacked by the Helvetians.

## LESSON XXVII.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

**160.**                      *ācer, eager, keen.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris, -ēs	ācris, ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
VOC.	(ācer)	(ācris)	(ācre)	(ācrēs)	(ācrēs)	(ācria)

Like *ācer* decline *celer, celeris, celere, swift.*

### **161.**

1. A **CLAUSE** is any part of a sentence containing a **subject**, a **verb**, and usually an **object**.

Sometimes one or more of these are not expressed if they can be easily supplied.

2. The **MAIN CLAUSE** or clauses of a sentence are those which, if used alone, would be **grammatically complete** (or make complete sense).

If there are two or more main clauses they are united by such conjunctions as **et, atque, sed, tamen**.

3. The **MAIN VERB** of a sentence is the verb of its **main clause**. Sometimes there are several main verbs.

Principal and Sub-  
ordinate Clauses.

4. A **SUBORDINATE CLAUSE** is a clause in its meaning **modifying some other clause** in the same sentence.

Such clauses are **introduced** by relative pronouns (who, which, etc.), or by subordinate particles.

a. These definitions are not without exceptions, but will probably be found exact enough for all practical purposes.

b. The Latin usually has **only one main clause** in each sentence. English usage is very different from the Latin in this respect.

c. In the following example the main clause is printed in small capitals: SED INTER HUNC COLLEM ad quem legiōnēs properābant ATQUE LOCUM in quō primum pūgnāverant ERANT MULTĪ BŌIĪ ET TULINGĪ, MĪLITĒS quī in novissimō agmine hostis fuerant.

### 162.

1. As a rule modifying words or clauses come **before** the word modified. This is the opposite of the English order, except with adjectives: *Summae virtūtis homō, A man of the greatest courage.* Prope flūmen Metaurum ā Rōmānīs interfectus est, *He was killed near the river Metaurus by the Romans.* **Order of Words.**

2. The **emphatic** or important **words** come **toward the first**.

3. The **verb**, excepting **sum**, comes at the **end** of its clause. Exceptions to this rule are very rare.

### 163.

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Devious	Equine	Homicide	Magnitude
Equestrian	Flume	Liberality	Multiplicand

### 164.

#### PROELIUM CUM HELVĒTIIS. —II.

Sed inter hunc collem ad quem legiōnēs **properābant** atque locum in quō primum pūgnāverant, erant multī Bōiī et Tulingī, militēs quī in novissimō agmine **hostis** fuerant. Hi summō studiō legiōnēs oppūgnāvērunt. Tum reliquī **hostēs**, quī in altō colle erant, rūsus cum Rōmānīs pūgnāre **properāvērunt**. Hōs II partēs legiōnum resistēbant; cum illis tertia pars pugnāvit. In hōc locō diū **hostis** pūgnābat.

Tandem multi Helvëtiî rûrsus in collem, **reliquî** ad impedimenta, sê recêpêrunt. Hunc proelium ab horâ septimâ ad **noctem** pûgnâtum est. Ad multam **noctem** ad impedimenta pûgnâbant. Tandem castra **hostis** â legiônibus capta sunt.

**Reliquî** Helvëtiî in fugâ ex-ivêrunt atque post tertiam **noctem** in Lingonês agmen ivit. Propter Caesaris nûntiôs frûmentum eis Lingonês nôn dabant. Frûmentî inopiâ lêgâtî ex **hostibus** ad Caesarem ivêrunt; **obsidês** armaque ei dedêrunt.

Sed postquam **obsidês** datî erant, multi ê castrîs ex-ivêrunt atque ad Rhênum flûmen **properâvêrunt**. Celeriter hî captî sunt. **Reliquî** Helvëtiî et Tulingî in terram suam rûrsus ivêrunt, postquam mâgnum numerum **obsidum** dedêrant. Hôrum **obsidum** multi filii prîncipum erant. Aedui **reliquîs** Bôiis agrôs dedêrunt.

## 165.

## WORD-LIST.

**nox, noctis**, f., *night*.

**hostis, hostis**, m. and f.,  
*enemy*.

**obses, obsidis**, m. and f.,  
*hostage, a person held as a  
pledge for the performance  
of a treaty*.

**reliquus, -a, -um**, *remaining,  
the rest of*.

**properô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus**,  
*to hasten, hurry*.

## 166.

## CAESAR'S FIRST FIGHT WITH THE HELVETIANS.

The river Arar flows<sup>1</sup> through<sup>2</sup> the lands of the Haedui and Sequani. It is told Caesar, "Three<sup>3</sup> parts of the forces of the Helvetians have crossed<sup>4</sup> the river." He hastens from the camp with three legions to that portion of their forces which has not crossed the river. He attacks this part, to which the rest of the Helvetians, because they have crossed the river, give no help.

Thus a great number of the Helvetians are overcome by the Roman soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> *influit*.    <sup>2</sup> *per*.    <sup>3</sup> *três*.    <sup>4</sup> *trâns-ivêrunt*.



# THE ROMAN DOMINIONS

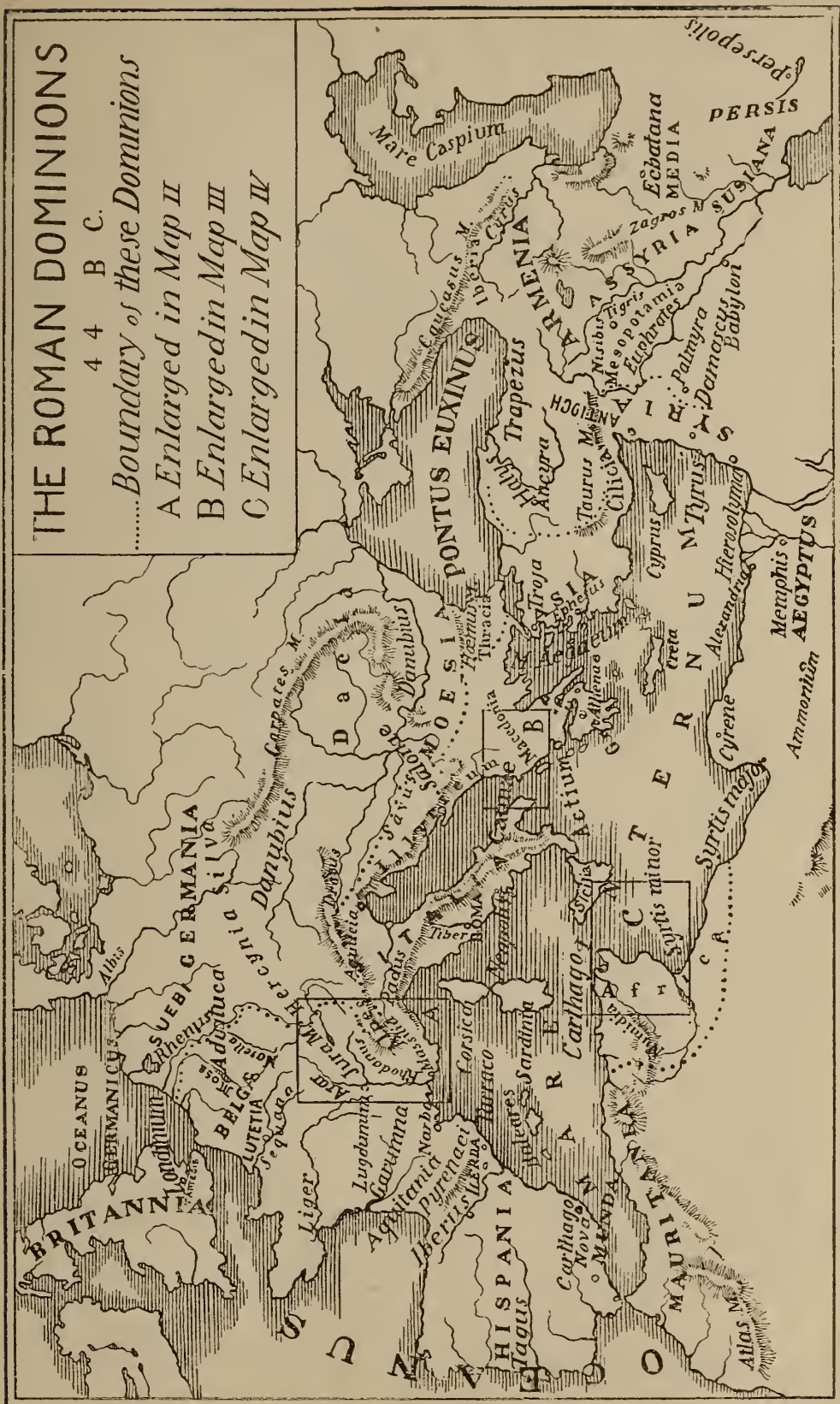
4 4 B C.

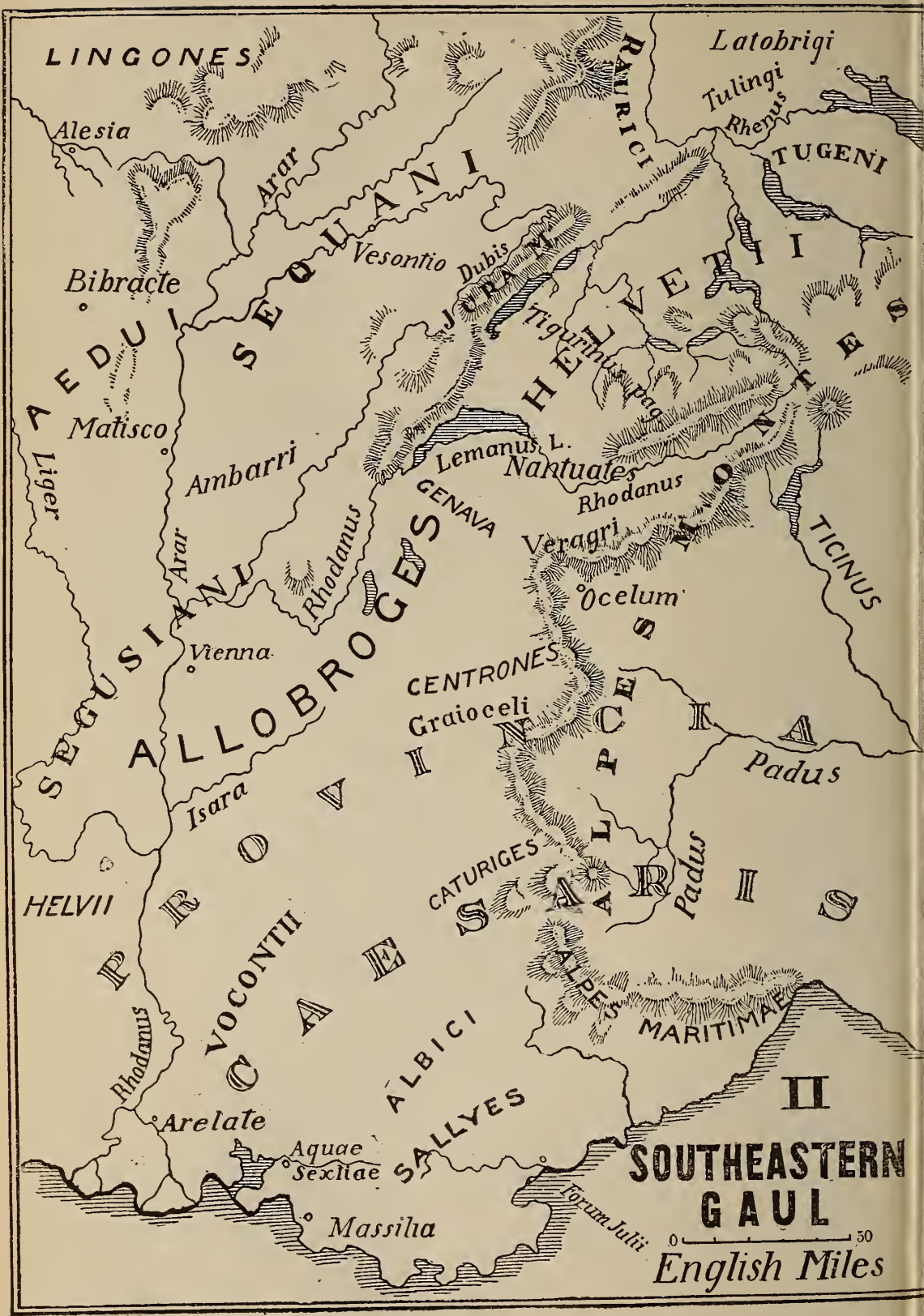
.....Boundary of these Dominions

A Enlarged in Map II

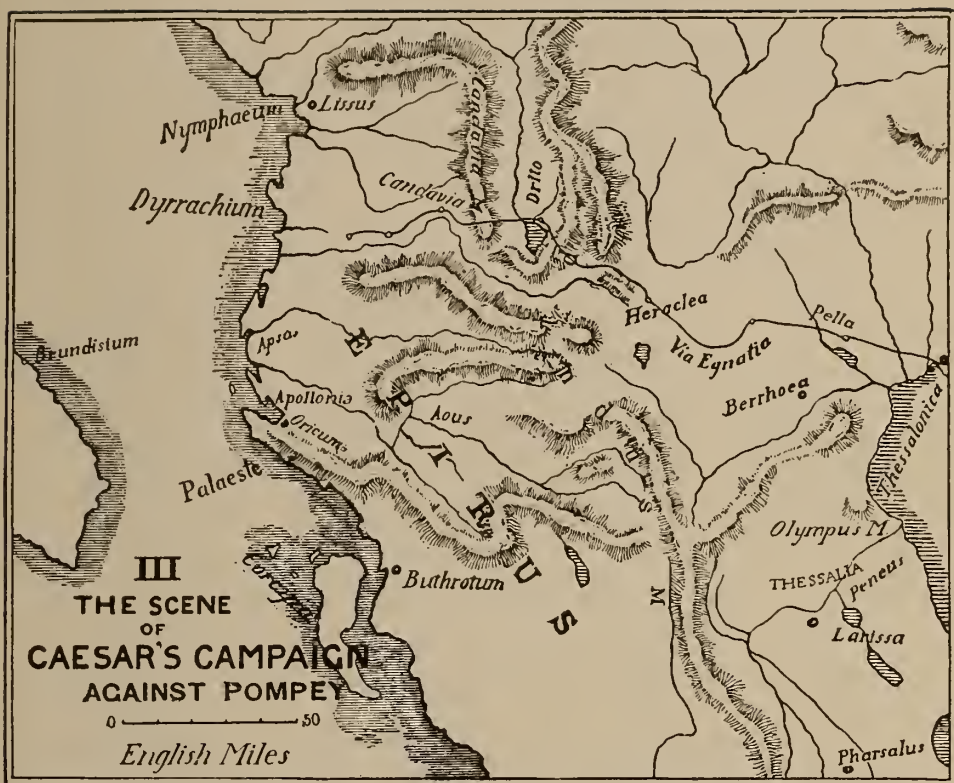
B Enlarged in Map III

C Enlarged in Map IV









## LESSON XXVIII.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.—CONTINUED.

**167.**            **facilis, easy.**    Stem **facili-**.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
NOM. <b>facilis</b>	<b>facile</b>	<b>facilēs</b>	<b>facilia</b>
GEN. <b>facilis</b>	<b>facilis</b>	<b>facilium</b>	<b>facilium</b>
DAT. <b>facilī</b>	<b>facilī</b>	<b>facilibus</b>	<b>facilibus</b>
ACC. <b>facilem</b>	<b>facile</b>	<b>facilīs, -ēs</b>	<b>facilia</b>
ABL. <b>facilī</b>	<b>facilī</b>	<b>facilibus</b>	<b>facilibus</b>
VOC. ( <b>facilis</b>	<b>facile</b> )	( <b>facilēs</b>	<b>facilia</b> )

**levis, light, nimble.**    Stem **levi-**.

NOM. <b>levis</b>	<b>leve</b>	<b>levēs</b>	<b>levia</b>
GEN. <b>levis</b>	<b>levis</b>	<b>levium</b>	<b>levium</b>
DAT. <b>levī</b>	<b>levī</b>	<b>levibus</b>	<b>levibus</b>
ACC. <b>levem</b>	<b>leve</b>	<b>levīs, -ēs</b>	<b>levia</b>
ABL. <b>levī</b>	<b>levī</b>	<b>levibus</b>	<b>levibus</b>
VOC. ( <b>levis</b>	<b>leve</b> )	( <b>levēs</b>	<b>levia</b> )

**vēlōx, swift.**

NOM. <b>vēlōx</b>	<b>vēlōx</b>	<b>vēlōcēs</b>	<b>vēlōcia</b>
GEN. <b>vēlōcis</b>	<b>vēlōcis</b>	<b>vēlōcium</b>	<b>vēlōcium</b>
DAT. <b>vēlōcī</b>	<b>vēlōcī</b>	<b>vēlōcibus</b>	<b>vēlōcibus</b>
ACC. <b>vēlōcēm</b>	<b>vēlōx</b>	<b>vēlōcīs, -ēs</b>	<b>vēlōcia</b>
ABL. <b>vēlōcī, -e</b>	<b>vēlōcī, -e</b>	<b>vēlōcibus</b>	<b>vēlōcibus</b>
VOC. ( <b>vēlōx</b>	<b>vēlōx</b> )	( <b>vēlōcēs</b>	<b>vēlōcia</b> )

**sapiēns, wise.**

NOM. sapiēns	sapiēns	sapientēs	sapientia
GEN. sapientīs	sapientīs	sapientium	sapientium
DAT. sapientī	sapientī	sapientibus	sapientibus
ACC. sapientem	sapiēns	sapientīs, -ēs	sapientia
ABL. sapientī, -e	sapientī, -e	sapientibus	sapientibus
VOC. (sapiēns	sapiēns)	(sapientēs	sapientia)

*a.* Adjectives declined like **acer** (160) are called adjectives of three terminations; those declined like **facilis** or **levis**, adjectives of two terminations; those declined like **vēlōx** and **sapiēns**, adjectives of one termination.

*b.* Notice that adjectives of three terminations (like **ācer**) and of two terminations (like **facilis**) have **only -ī in the ablative singular.**

**168.****ALLIED WORDS.**

Equinox	Omnibus	Reliquary
Hostile	Partial	Renovation
Littoral	Popularity	Virtuous

**169. Learn to unite**

A **genitive** with the nearest noun or pro-  
noun. Hints  
for Reading.

A **preposition** with its noun. The noun **follows** the preposition.

**Adjectives** with words in the **same cases.**

An **infinitive** which immediately **precedes** a verb with the verb.

*a.* Words composing such groups are united by **hyphens** ( - ) in portions of this lesson, and of some following lessons, as an aid to the pupil in learning to group the words.

**170.****CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPEĪ.****INTRODUCTION.**

Caesar first made his reputation as a general after

he had gone from Rome to govern the province of Gaul. Rome was then ruled by a senate whose members came almost entirely from a few families of rank. When Caesar became governor he ruled little more than a strip of land along the Mediterranean and the valley of the Po, or Padus, in modern Italy. In six years he had conquered all of Gaul, the land now called France. His "Gallic Wars" (the "Caesar" studied in schools) describes these campaigns. By an almost endless number of battles and marches he drilled and perfected an army probably finer than any the world had thus far seen.

The senate at Rome at that time ruled almost all of the nations whom the Romans considered civilized. The senators knew that Caesar was ambitious to destroy their power and rule in their place. Cicero, some of whose orations are usually studied after "Caesar," was one of their leaders. Now that Gaul had been conquered they feared that Caesar would attack them.

They turned to Pompey, or Pompeius, who was considered the greatest general of the time, refused to grant what Caesar wished, and began to enroll soldiers throughout Italy. But Caesar, entering Italy, burst upon them so suddenly that the recruits had scarcely time to gather before they were compelled to surrender to his advancing army. Pompey and his friends went to Brundisium, and thence sailed to Greece.

Here they were unmolested for a whole year, for Caesar had no fleet and thought it the best course first to invade Spain and subdue an army which opposed him there. When at last he returned to fight with Pompey his first difficulty was to transport his army by sea from Brundisium to Epirus in the face of Pompey's fleet. The risks he took in doing this are told in the following account, adapted from his "Civil Wars."

## I.

Pompēius, quoniam annī - spatium sine - bellō - atque - hoste eī fuerat, māgnās - cōpiās **parāverat**. Ex - **omnibus** - **regiōnibus** ad - **litora** māgnam - **classem** **parāverat**. Māgna - pecūnia eī ab - Asiā,<sup>1</sup> - Syriā, - rēgibusque - **omnibus**, - et - liberis - Graeciae - populis data - est ; māgnam hominēs - eārum - **omnium** - **regiōnum**, quārum ipse prīnceps erat, eī dederant. Legiōnēs eī erant civium - Rōmānōrum VIII, ūna ex - Ciliciā veterāna, ūna ex - Crētā - et - Macedoniā ex - veterānis - militibus, quī in - his - **regiōnibus** agrōs - atque - pecūniam habēbant ; II ex - Asiā. Cum - Scipiōne ex - Syriā legiōnēs III properāre - **parābant**. Sagittāriōs ex Syriā reliquisque **regiōnibus** III mīlia habuit, equitumque VII mīlia. Ex quibus ad numerum D prīnceps ex Thraciā dederat ; ex Macedoniā CC erant, quōrum prīnceps summā virtūte fuit ; D ex Alexandriā, Gallōs Germānōsque, quī ibi ad rēgem fuerant, Pompēi filius **classe** portāverat. Frūmenti cōpiam māgnam ex Asiā, Crētā, reliquisque **regiōnibus** **parāverat**, quae **classe** ad **lītus** Ēpīri portābantur.

Ad **omnia** **litora** Ēpīri cum legiōnibus Pompēius ivit, quae **regiō** est prope Ītaliā, ubi Caesaris cōpiae conlocātae sunt. **Classem** quae in **omnibus** **lītoribus** **parāta** erat, ad **litora** Ēpīri conlocāvit. Prīnceps **omnis** hūius **classis** erat Bibulus.

## 171.

## WORD-LIST.

**classis**, **classis**, f., *fleet*.

**lītus**, **lītoris**, n., *coast*.

**regiō**, **regiōnis**, f., *direction*,  
*region*.

**parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to*  
*prepare*.

**omnis**, **omne**, *all*.

## 172.

## POMPEY.

Cnaeus Pompeius had fought in many lands. In Italy (when) a young man (i.e. of few years) he had

<sup>1</sup> See Map I for the places mentioned in this paragraph.



given help to Sulla, a great Roman general,<sup>1</sup> against<sup>2</sup> the legions which he was attacking. Very many Romans were killed by Sulla, who gave their lands to his soldiers. But he was the friend of Pompey. "You are," he had told him, "Pompeius the Great." In Africa Pompey defeated the enemies of Sulla. In Spain he fought with Sertorius successfully (in successful battles), a chief of great skill and daring. In Italy five thousand slaves,<sup>3</sup> who had been fighting with the Romans and were hastening into Gaul, were overcome by him. Because of all these successful wars he was loved by the Roman people.

<sup>1</sup> imperātor.<sup>2</sup> contrā.<sup>3</sup> servus.



## LESSON XXIX.

173.

### EXAMPLES.

**Prīmā lūce ad castra properāvērunt,** *At daybreak they hastened to the camp.*

**Nocte in fugā ex-īvērunt,** *They departed in flight by night.*

**His decem annis multās terrās oppūgnāvit,** *Within these ten years he has attacked many lands.*

Notice that the **ablatives** in these sentences answer the question **when?** or, **within what time?** Ablative of Time.

**174. RULE.**—**Time when,** or **within which,** is expressed by the **ablative.**

175.

### ALLIED WORDS.

Magnate	Numerical	Pedestrian
Navy	Paucity	Principal
Nocturnal	Pedal	Principality
	Virile	

**176. CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPEI.**—II.

Caesar ex - Rōmā ad - oppidum - Brundisium hōc - tempore vēnit. Ad - hunc - locum legiōnēs - XII, equitēsque - omnēs ivērunt. Māgna ei fuit **nāvium** - inopia, tamen militibus ita dixit ; “ Quoniam prope estis ad - finem - labōrum - atque - periculōrum, in - Italiā impedimenta conlocāte, omnia ex - victōriā sperāte, atque cum - Pompēiō fortiter pugnāre - parāte.” Hieme, cum - VII - legiōnibus,

**nāvēs** solvit, quārum longae - **nāvēs** XII erant. Brevi - tempore ad - terram - Ēpīrī vēnit, atque ad - eum - locum, quī Palaeste appellābātur, ex - omnibus - **nāvibus** milites ex-ivērunt.

Id principibus Pompēi classis nūntiātum est. Māgna erat Bibulī classis, nam prope Palaestem **nāvēs** CXXVIII conlocātae erant. Ācer erat Bibulus, sed Caesaris cōsiliō superātus erat. Celeriter **nāvēs** solvit, atque Caesaris XXX **nāvēs**, quae rūsus ad oppidum Brundisium properāre temptābant, omnes incendit, atque hōc ignī quī in **nāvibus** erant interfectī sunt. Tum omne litus classibus hieme occupāvit.

## 177

## WORD-LIST.

**nāvis**, **nāvis**, f., *ship*.

## 178.

POMPEY.—*Continued*.

The men of Cilicia with their fleets attacked the ships of the Romans along<sup>1</sup> all parts of the coast. At that time grain was brought to Rome by ship from Africa and Sicily. Because of these fleets there was a great lack of grain in Rome. The Roman people gave five hundred ships to Pompey. With this fleet he attacked the enemy, who surpassed him in number of ships. But because they had not stationed all of these ships in one (125) place, many of them in a short time were killed. The rest retreated<sup>2</sup> to Cilicia and Crete. Pompey attacked their towns in Cilicia, which were given (up) to him.

<sup>1</sup> in.<sup>2</sup> sē recēpērunt

## LESSON XXX.

### SECOND CONJUGATION. Ē-VERBS.

**Moneō** (stem **mone-**) *advise*.

Principal parts, **moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus**.

**179.** Learn the present, imperfect and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō** (481).

*a.* Compare the forms of **moneō** with those of **amō**. How do they differ?

*b.* Why is it a help in inflecting **moneō** to remember that its stem ends in **ē**?

**180.** 1. Monent, monēbant, monēbunt. 2. Monētur, monēbātur, monēbitur. 3. Monet, monēbat, monēbit. 4. Monentur, monēmur, monēmini. 5. Moneor, monēmus, monēbimus. 6. Monēbuntur, monē, monēre. 7. Monēbimur, monēbantur, monēri. 8. Monēbō, monēbāmur, monēte. 9. Monēbam, monēbar, monēbāmus. 10. Monēbor, moneō.

**181.** Like **moneō** inflect in both voices **habeō**, have; **teneō**, hold; **prohibeō**, keep away.

**182.**

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Annual

Multiform

Sylvan

Habit

Naval

Territory

Itinerary

Prince

Urban

## 183. CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPĒI.—III.

Eō tempore in Candaviā Pompēius erat, **iter**que ē Macedoniā ad **urbēs** Apollōniam Dyrrhachiumque **habēbat**. Quoniam ā Caesare litus occupābātur māgnīs **itineribus** ad **urbem** Apollōniam properāvit. Sed ille postquam cum militibus ē nāvibus ex-īvit, ad oppidum Oricum celeriter **iter habēbat**, cūius oppidi Graeci sē atque oppidum ei in deditiōnem dedērunt. Celeriter ad **urbem** Apollōniam **iter habēbat**. Id Staberiō, quī ibi lēgātus Pompēi erat, nūntiābātur. Aquam in arcem portāvit atque obsidēs ē populō **urbis** petivit. Sed quoniam ii ei nōn dati sunt, fūgit ex **urbe** Staberius. Ad Caesarem lēgātī ex hāc **urbe** et ē regiōnibus quae prope erant vērunt atque omnia in deditiōnem ei dedērunt. Tum ad **urbem** Dyrrhachium properāre temptāvit.

Sed Pompēius ā - nūntiis monēbātur, atque ad - **urbem** - Dyrrhachium etiam nocte māgnīs - **itineribus** properāvit. Caesare milites - eius perterrēbantur, multique quī hominēs - Ēpiri erant ē - signis ex-ivērunt. Sed prope - Dyrrhachium princeps Labiēnus vēnit et iūrāvit, “Fidus per - omnia erō.” Hōc reliquī - lēgātī - tribūnique - militum atque omnēs - milites iūrāvērunt.

Ad - **urbem** primus Pompēius vēnit, atque ita ab - hāc - **urbe** cum - regiōnibus quae prope erant Caesarem prohibēbat.

## 184.

## WORD-LIST.

**iter, itineris, n.,** a road, a **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus,** to have.  
*march, journey.*  
**urbs, urbis, f.,** city.

## 185.

## LABIENUS.

Labiēnus was a man of great bravery and skill in war. (As) lieutenant of Caesar he had fought against (172, n. 2) the Helvetians. In a battle with the Nervii he with two legions attacked and seized the camp of the enemy, and then quickly (134, n. 2) gave help

to Caesar, who was with two legions whose soldiers had become terrified and were almost <sup>1</sup> overcome.

In many battles he was faithful to Caesar, but after <sup>2</sup> the latter had conquered the Gauls, because he attacked Pompey, Labienus fought against him in four great battles, and was killed in the battle which was fought at the town Munda, in the country (of) Spain.

<sup>1</sup> paene.

<sup>2</sup> postquam.

## LESSON XXXI.

### 186. SECOND CONJUGATION.—CONTINUED.

Learn the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **moneō**. (481.)

#### 187.

1. Monuī, monitus sum. 2. Monuit, monuerat, monuerit. 3. Monitus erit, monuerint. 4. Monueram, monueris, monuērunt. 5. Monuisti, monuerās, monuisse. 6. Monitus eram, monitus est, monitus esse. 7. Monita erat, monita es.

#### 188.

a. Compare the forms **amābās, portābāmus, nūntiābat, tenēbam, monēbant**. To what tense do they belong, and to what conjugations? If we remove the personal endings (76), **amābā-, portābā-, nūnti-** Tense Signs.  
**āba-, tenēba-, monēba-** are left. Notice **ba**, found in them all. What does **ba** mean? It is called the **tense sign** of the **imperfect** tense. Why is it given this name?

b. Has the future tense any tense sign?

#### 189.

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Itinerate	Habitual	Pugnacity	Tenable	Urbane
Nave	Prohibition	Renovate	Temporal	Virility

#### 190. CAESAR ET CLASSIS POMPEI.—IV.

In order that the pupil may acquire the habit of noting the endings, they are printed in heavy-faced type in parts of this and the following lesson.



Caesar sua castra ad flūmen Apsūm conlocāvit, et ibi reliquās ex Italiā legiōnēs expectābat. Pompēius in castrīs trans flūmen Apsūm suās cōpiās omnēs auxiliaque tenēbat, sed frumentum Caesaris prohibēre temptābat.

Interim Calēnus lēgātus quī cum reliquīs legiōnibus equitibusque in urbe Brundisiō erat nāvēs quās habēbat solvit. Bonā fortunā brevī tempore nāvīs quae nūntiōs ex Caesare portābat ad eum vēnit. Nūntiī monēbant, “Omnia litora classibus Pompēi tenentur.” Sē in urbem omnibus cum suis nāvibus recēpit. Ūna ex hīs nāvibus, in quā nullī militēs erant, nōn sē recēpit atque ā Bibulō capta est. Omnēs in eā ad unum interfectī sunt.

Lēgātus Pompēi, Libō, ab oppidō Oricō ex-ivit cum classe cuius princeps erat, C nāvium, ad urbem Brundisium insulamque, quae contrā urbem est, occupāvit. Nōn māgnū numerum nāvium incendit, et multōs militēs Calēnī perterrēbat. Nocte eius militēs atque sagittariī in terram ē classe ex-ivērunt, et Calēnī equitēs perterrēbant. Pompēiō per nūntiōs nūntiāvit, “Ipse meā classe auxilia Caesaris prohibēbō.” Ab urbe ā legiōnibus Calēnī suae cōpiae prohibēbantur, tamen insulam tenēbant, sed equitibus quōs Antōnius, lēgātus summā virtūte, quī eō tempore in urbe erat, per litus conlocāverat, ex aquā prohibēbantur. Inopiae causā aquae Libō ab urbe brevī tempore ex-ivit.

Tamen multum - tempus erat et hiems iam prope fuerat, neque ab - urbe - Brundisiō nāvēs - legiōnēsque vēnērunt ad - Caesarem, quī suās - cōpiās in - castrīs tenēbat. Calēnus nōn suās - nāvēs solvit quoniam numerō - nāvium Bibulus superābat, atque omnia - litora māgnō - studiō - cōnsiliōque tenēbat. Ita auxilium ā - Caesare prohibēre temptābat.

## 191.

## WORD-LIST.

**ex** (before a consonant, usually ē), Preposition followed by Ablative, *from*.

L. of C.

**tempus, temporis**, n., *time*.  
**suus, sua, suum**, *his, their*.

prohibeō, prohibēre, prohi- teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus,  
 buī, prohibitus, *to keep to hold, keep.*  
*away.* Often with **ex**.

*a.* **Suus, sua, suum** frequently refers to the subject of the sentence.

*b.* For "his" or "their," when the reference is not to the subject, "**ēius**," "**eōrum**," "**illius**," "**illōrum**," or the genitive of some similar pronoun is used.

For instance: *The Gauls attacked the troops of the legate, but their horsemen were easily compelled by his soldiers to retire,*  
 Galli cōpiās lēgātī oppūgnāvērunt, sed **suī** equitēs facile  
 ā **ēius** militibus sē recipere coāctī sunt.

Note that **suī** agrees with **equitēs** in gender, number and case, precisely as an adjective would.

## 192.

The island opposite the town Brundisium was seized by Libo, a lieutenant of Pompey, with his fleet of a hundred ships. Calenus, Caesar's lieutenant, had at this time five legions in the city, and kept Libo away from it; still his soldiers were terrified.

There was no water upon the island, and for this reason the soldiers of Libo attempted to carry water from the (main)land to the island. But Antony, a skilful lieutenant and friend of Caesar, stationed horsemen along the coast, who kept them from (securing) water. Because of this Libo soon went away from the island.

## LESSON XXXII.

193.

EXAMPLES.

Gallī Rōmānōs cōnsiliō nōn superābant, *The Gauls did not surpass the Romans in skill.*

Haec terra illī flūminum numerō est similis, *This country is like that one in the number of its rivers.*

Galba nōmine tantum prīnceps fuit, *Galba was leader only in name.*

Cōnsiliō limits superābant in meaning. In the same way numerō and nōmine limit similis and prīnceps. The ablative thus used is called the **Ablative of Specification**, because it **specifies in what respect** a statement is true.

Ablative of  
Specification.

194.

**RULE.**—The **Ablative of Specification** is used to point out **in what respect a statement is true.**

195.

ALLIED WORDS.

Affiliation	Equinoctial	Multiply	Portable	Temptation
Armament	Liberation	Numerous	Sum	Unpopular

196. CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPEI.—V.

Tandem Caesar suōs principēs quī ad oppidum Brundisium erant monuit, “Primō secundō tempore ad litora Ēpirī properāte.” Brevī tempore Auster flābat atque nāvēs solvērunt. Postquam ex terrā Ēpirī vidēbantur, Coponius, classis prīnceps quae erat ad urbem Dyrrachium, eās

oppugnāre temptāvit. Prope vēnit, sed māgnā fortunā Auster incrēbuit, et ita Calēnum nāvēsque suās servābat. Labōre nautārum tempestātem superāre temptābat. “Brevi tempore,” dixit, “forsitan Auster nōn ita gravis erit; tum hās nāvēs oppugnābō.” Quoniam perterrēbantur ad locum Nymphaeum Calenus Antōniusque ivērunt, quī locus ab Āfricō, sed nōn ab Austrō, erat tūtus. Māgnū eīs tempestāte periculum fuit, sed māximā fortunā Auster in Āfricum sē vertit.

Tum Coponius perterrēbātur, quoniam ex litore Āfricō prohibēbātur. Nāvēs eius ad ūnam numerō XVI inter-ivērunt, et ex māgnō numerō nautārum pars tempestāte interfecta est; pars ā militibus Calēni servāta est.

### 197.

Calenus, who was at the city Brundisium, at the first opportunity hastened with his fleet to the coast of Epirus. Coponius, the admiral of the fleet of Pompey at the town Dyrrhachium, tried to attack him, but was kept off by the heavy weather. Nevertheless<sup>1</sup> he terrified Calenus, who went to Nymphaeum, a place upon the coast, unprotected from the south wind, which was then blowing. He was for this reason<sup>2</sup> in great peril. But the wind suddenly changed to a north wind, from which he was protected, because he was near<sup>3</sup> the coast, where<sup>4</sup> the hills were high. Thus he disembarked<sup>5</sup> his troops and set them in camp.

<sup>1</sup> tamen.

<sup>2</sup> causa.

<sup>3</sup> prope.

<sup>4</sup> ubi.

<sup>5</sup> See 176, end of first paragraph.

## LESSON XXXIII.

### 198.      FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of this declension ending in **-us** are **masculine**; those ending in **-ū** are **neuter**. (But see 10, 3, 4.)

*a.* But **domus**, *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, or *band (of men)*, are **feminine**.

### 199.

**Cursus**, m., *a running, speed.*

**Cornū**, n., *horn, wing (of an army).*

#### SINGULAR.

NOM.	Cursus	Cornū
GEN.	Cursūs	Cornūs
DAT.	Cursuī, -ū	Cornū
ACC.	Cursum	Cornū
ABL.	Cursū	Cornū
VOC.	(Cursus)	(Cornū)

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	Cursūs	Cornua
GEN.	Cursuum	Cornuum
DAT.	Cursibus	Cornibus
ACC.	Cursus	Cornua
ABL.	Cursibus	Cornibus
VOC.	(Cursūs)	(Cornua)



a. **Domus**, *house*, has also forms of the Second Declension. See 472.

b. Decline together **māgnus exercitus**, *large army*; **sua manus**, *his hand*; **parvum cornū**, *small horn*.

**200.**

## ALLIED WORDS.

Habituate	Itinerant	Multiplication	Partiality	Prohibit
Hostility	Locate	Militia	Pöpolate	Suburb

**201.** CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPĒI.—VI.

Omnēs cōpiās Antōnius in castris conlocāvit, quārum erat summa legiōnēs IV, et equitēs DCCC, atque id nūntiis Caesarī nūntiāvit. Sed Caesarī longum flūmine erat iter, atque Pompēius clam et nocte ex castris quae ā flūmine Apsō erant ad Antōnium māgnis itineribus vēnit. In idōneō locō prope castra Antōnī cōpiās conlocāvit suōsque omnēs in castris continuit ignēsque prohibuit. “Quoniam meōs milites Antōnius nōn videt iter ad Caesarem habēbit. Eum in itinere oppugnābō.” Ita dixit. Tamen haec per Graecōs Antōniō nūntiāta sunt. Ille per nūntiōs Caesarem monuit, et in castris suās cōpiās tenēbat. Caesar celeriter ad eum vēnit.

Pompēius ex eō locō ex-īvit, omnibusque cōpiis ad locum Asparīgium vēnit atque ibi idōneō locō castra conlocāvit. Caesar prope castra Pompēi sua castra conlocāvit.

FĪNIS.

**202.**

Caesar was surpassed in number of soldiers by Pompey, still, because he had legions which had fought in many battles against<sup>1</sup> the Gauls, he was not attacked by the latter, very many of whose legions were new. The friends of Pompey were eager to fight with Caesar. At length their counsel prevailed, and a battle was fought at the place Pharsalia, in Greece.

<sup>1</sup> *contrā*.



**203.****WORD-LIST FOR REVIEW.**

fortūna	annus	ad
inopia	proelium	ex, ē
		quoniam

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus

reliquus, -a, -um      summus, -a, -um      suus, -a, -um

classis

nox

agmen

collis

obses

flūmen

eques

pars

iter

homō

pēs

litus

hostis

pedes

tempus

labor

princeps

legiō

regiō

omnis, omne

miles

urbs

nāvis

virtūs

**204.** Translate these words :

obsidum

hominum

regiōnum

classibus

equitēs

labōris

legiōnēs

itinere

principem

militis

virtūtēs

pede

parti

tempore

peditis

urbem

hostis

agmina

nocte

litoribus

flūmine

## LESSON XXXIV.

### THIRD CONJUGATION. E VERBS.

**Regō** (stem **rege-**), *rule*.

Principal Parts, **regō, regere, rēxī, rectus**.

**205.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **regō**. (482.)

*a.* Compare the forms of **regō** with those of **amō** and **moneō**. Wherein are they alike, and wherein do they differ? Concentrate your attention upon the **differences**.

**206.** 1. Regunt, regēbant, regent. 2. Regis, regēbās, regēs. 3. Regitur, regēbātur, regētur. 4. Regēbantur, regēbāris, regēbāmus. 5. Regeris, regimus, regi. 6. Regit, reguntur, regēris. 7. Reget, regimur, regere. 8. Regēbat, regēmus, regite. 9. Regēmur, regiminī, rege.

**207.**

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Data	Magnanimous	Tempt
Invulnerable	Multipliable	Tenancy
Liberal	Omniscient	
Locality	Population	

**208.**

PISŌ AQUITĀNUS.

An incident from Caesar's Gallic campaigns.

Nostrōs equitēs, qui nōn parāti erant, Germānōrum equitēs subitō oppūgnāvērunt. Nostri ad agmen legiōnum fūgērunt.

In eō proeliō cum Germānis ex equitibus nostris interfecti sunt LXXII; in hīs vir summā virtūte, Pīsō Aquitānus, cūius avus in suā terrā rex fuerat et amicus ab nostrō senātū appellātus erat.

Hic in proeliō frātri, quī ab hostibus superābātur, auxilium dedit, et eum servāvit; sed ipsīus equus vulnerātus est. Ipse diū fortiter sē dēfendit, sed tandem graviter vulnerātus est et ita interfectus est. Id ēius frāter, quem ille servāverat, procul vidit: ex equō in hostēs ūnus properāvit atque interfectus est.

**209.** 1. The cohorts will bravely defend every one who will hasten into their camp.

2. This man's grandfather was king, but he himself will not rule over the people.

3. We shall defend the walls, and you shall bring us the weapons.

4. These Germans will hasten on horseback with the messenger to the winter camp, and will defend him if<sup>1</sup> they are attacked.

5. The horsemen of Caesar are Gauls, whom the Germans easily<sup>2</sup> conquer. If the Gauls shall dare<sup>3</sup> to fight with him, he will defend the lands which he has seized by means of these very Germans whom he is now attacking with the aid of the Gauls.

6. If you are ready, attack the men on the wall.

<sup>1</sup> sī.

<sup>2</sup> facile.

<sup>3</sup> audeō.

## LESSON XXXV.

### THIRD CONJUGATION—CONTINUED.

**210.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **regō**. (482.)

*a.* Compare these forms with the forms of **amō** and **moneō**.

**211.** 1. **Rēxit, rēxerat, rēxerit.** 2. **Rectus erit, rectae erimus, rectus eram.** 3. **Recta sum, rectum esse, rēxerint.** 4. **Rectus est, rectī sumus, rēxerant.** 5. **Rēxistis, rēxerō, rectae estis.** 6. **Rēxerimus, rēximus, rectus erō.** 7. **Rēxī, rēxistī.**

**212.** *a.* Have all the verbs of the first conjugation so far learned, excepting **dō (dedī)**, principal parts which are alike?

*b.* Are **teneō (tentus)** and its compounds the only verbs of the second conjugation so far learned whose principal parts are unlike those of **moneō**?

*c.* How many verbs of the third conjugation can you find whose principal parts are like those of **regō**?

### 213.

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Belligerent

Missile

Suburban

Depart

Navigate

Tenacity

Mediterranean

Nocturn

Missive

Numeration

## 214. A FIGHT AROUND A HILLOCK.

Quō annō Pompēius **exercitum** classemque parat Caesar cum **exercitū** in Hispāniā contrā **exercitum** Afrānī, lēgāti Pompēi, bellum **gerit**. Ad urbem Ilerdam proelia **gerunt**. Est inter hanc urbem et proximum collem māgnū, ubi castra Afrānius habet, **parvus** collis. Ex urbe Afrānius frūmentum ad suum exercitum portat.

Caesar dīcit, “Ad hunc **parvum** collem cohortēs **mittam**, itaque ā frūmentō **exercitus** Afrānī prohibēbitur.” Legiōnēs III ex castris **mittit**, et in idōneīs locīs prope **parvum** collem conlocat, quibus ex locīs antesignānī cursū **parvum** collem occupāre temptant. Sed hōc quae prō castris sunt Afrānī cohortēs vident, et brevī itinere ad **parvum** collem celeriter **mittuntur**. Proelium **geritur**, et quoniam primō in **parvum** collem Afrānī cohortēs contendunt nostri superantur. Auxilium iīs **mittēbātur**, sed tandem omnēs sē ad signa legiōnum recēpērunt. Eā causā legiō quae in eō cornū conlocāta erat locum nōn tenuit atque in proximum collem sē recēpit. Omnēs legiōnēs III pērterrēbantur, atque in eās milītēs Afrānī ācritē contendēbant. Legiōnem Caesar **mīsīt**, quae auxilium dedit. Proelium bene **gessērunt**, nam milītēs Afrānī sē ad urbem recēpērunt et sub mūrō proelium **gessērunt**.

## 215.

## WORD-LIST.

**exercitus**, -ūs, m., *army*.

**parvus**, -a, -um, *small*.

**mittō**, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missus**,  
*to send*.

**gerō**, **gerere**, **gessi**, **gestus**,  
*to be engaged in doing*  
*(something), to do, or carry*  
*on*.

216. At the time when Pompey was preparing an army in Epirus the chiefs of the Roman armies in Africa and Spain and the people of Massilia, a city in Gaul, were all fighting against Caesar and his generals. Caesar sent Curio with III new legions to

Sicily and Africa, but went <sup>1</sup> himself to Spain, because his forces in that land were opposed to a large and good army.

Curio went to Sicily, and from there carried a part of his army across<sup>2</sup> by fleet to Africa, where<sup>3</sup> he fought with Varus, who was one of Pompey's friends.

<sup>1</sup> *ivit.*

<sup>2</sup> Use *trāns-portāre*.

<sup>3</sup> *ubi.*



## LESSON XXXVI.

217.

PULLŌ ET VORĒNUS.

Erant in legiōne virī māximā virtūte, centuriōnēs, Titus Pullō et Lūcius Vorēnus, quī contrōversiās continenter dē suā virtūte habēbant. Ex his Pullō cum Gallis, quī hiberna legiōnis occupāre temptābant, ex vallō ācriter pūgnābat. “ Quid dubitās, Vorēne ? ” dixit, “ Hōc tempus dē nostris contrōversiis iūdicābit,” et statim extrā vallum ex-īvit. Ad partem ubi hostēs multi sunt visī contendit.

Nōn Vorēnus sē in vallō continuit, sed quoque extrā hiberna ex-īvit. Pullō tēlum in hostēs misit, atque hominem ex Gallis interfēcit. In eum omnēs hostēs tēla misērunt. Trānsfixum est scūtum Pullōnī et tēlum in balteō dēfixum est. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāginam, et gladium māgnā difficultate ē-dūxit. Eum tum hostēs celeriter oppūgnābant, sed illi Vorēnus vēnit et auxilium dedit. Ad hunc sē ā Pullōne omnēs Galli vertērunt. Gladiō pūgnam bene gerit Vorēnus atque hominem eōrum interfēcit. Sed cum māgnō studiō in reliquōs contendit, atque in locum inferiōrem concīdit. In eum rūsus hostēs celeriter contendēbant, sed Pullō eī auxilium dedit.

Postquam ita pūgnāvērant summā cum virtūte sē intrā hiberia recēpērunt.

218. (Use whatever words you think will best express the sense of the following lines, which are taken from Macaulay's “ Battle of Lake Regillus.” Do not try to translate it word for word.)

But fiercer <sup>1</sup> grew the fighting  
 Around <sup>2</sup> Valerius dead,  
 For Titus dragged <sup>3</sup> him by the feet  
 And Aulus by the head.<sup>4</sup>  
 "On, Latins,<sup>5</sup> on," quoth Titus;  
 "See (how) the rebels <sup>6</sup> fly."<sup>7</sup>  
 "Romans, stand firm," quoth Aulus,  
 "And win this fight, or <sup>8</sup> die."<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Nominative m. and f. *ācrior*, n. *ācrius*. <sup>2</sup> *circum*. <sup>3</sup> *trahere*.

<sup>4</sup> *caput*. <sup>5</sup> *Latinus*, -ī. <sup>6</sup> i.e. Romans. <sup>7</sup> *to yield*, *cēdere*. <sup>8</sup> *aut*.

<sup>9</sup> Imperative of "*to die*" is *moriminī*.

## LESSON XXXVII.

**219.** There are three degrees of comparison: the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative**.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
	(ending <b>-ior</b> )	(ending <b>-issimus</b> )
<b>lātus</b> ( <i>lato-</i> ), <i>wide</i> .	<b>latior</b> , <i>wider</i> .	<b>lātissimus</b> , <i>widest</i> .
<b>levis</b> ( <i>levi-</i> )	<b>levior</b>	<b>levissimus</b>
<b>vēlōx</b> ( <i>vēlōci-</i> )	<b>vēlōcior</b>	<b>vēlōcissimus</b>

*a.* How is the comparative formed from the positive in these examples? How is the superlative formed?

**220.**

<b>liber</b> ( <i>libero-</i> ), <i>free</i> .	<b>liberior</b> , <i>freer</i> .	<b>liberrimus</b> , <i>freest</i> .
<b>ācer</b> ( <i>ācri-</i> )	<b>ācrior</b>	<b>ācerrimus</b>

*a.* Notice that **adjectives in -er** have the ending **-rimus** in the **superlative**. Comparing of  
Adjectives.

**221.**      **DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.**

*Paradigm.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<b>NOM.</b>	<b>altior</b>	<b>altius</b>	<b>altiōrēs</b>	<b>altiōra</b>
<b>GEN.</b>	<b>altiōris</b>	<b>altiōris</b>	<b>altiōrum</b>	<b>altiōrum</b>
<b>DAT.</b>	<b>altiōrī</b>	<b>altiōrī</b>	<b>altiōribus</b>	<b>altiōribus</b>
<b>ACC.</b>	<b>altiōrem</b>	<b>altius</b>	<b>altiōrēs, -īs</b>	<b>altiōra</b>
<b>ABL.</b>	<b>altiōre, -ī</b>	<b>altiōre, -ī</b>	<b>altiōribus</b>	<b>altiōribus</b>
<b>VOC.</b>	<b>(altior</b>	<b>altius)</b>	<b>(altiōres</b>	<b>altiōra)</b>

a. The **comparatives** of all adjectives (except **plus**, 229) are **declined** like **altior**.

b. The **superlatives** are all declined like **bonus** (474).

Compare and decline in the comparative : **longus**, **grātus**, **novus**, **miser**, **celer**, **atrōx**.

**222.****EXAMPLES.**

Mōns est altior quam collis, Mōns est altior collī,	} <i>A mountain is higher than a hill.</i>	<u>quam.</u>

Observe that in the first sentence, where **quam** is used, **collis** is in the **same case** as **mons**; but in the second, where **quam** is omitted, the **ablative collī** is used.

**RULE.**—The **ablative** is used with **comparatives** in the sense of **than** when **quam** is omitted.

**223.****EXAMPLES.**

**Mūrus est altior**, *The wall is rather (or too) high.*

**Mūrus est altissimus**, *The wall is very high.*

These sentences illustrate meanings sometimes given to the comparative and superlative.

**224.**

1. Quis mūrum longiōrem quam Rōmae vidit ?
2. Quis longiōrem mūrum quam mūrum Rōmae vidit ?
3. Hōstēs in altissimō collī agmine Caesaris perterrēbantur.
4. Quis nigriōrem equum eō habet ?
5. Hōc iter ad hiberna Caesaris est brevissimum.
6. Collēs altissimī cum labōre ab ācerimō hoste tenēbantur.
7. Padus est flūmen longius Arnō.
8. Peditēs quōs dux in altō collī tenuit hostium cōpiās ab eō prohibēbunt.

9. Arma quibus Rōmānī ā mūrō prohibēbantur gladii longissimī erant.

10. Terra Gallia altiōra flūmina quam Ītalia habet.

11. Prohibētur ab urbe reliquīs cīvibus.

12. Nōn facile ab urbibus peditēs hostium prohibēbat.

13. Novissimum agmen hostium in altō colle visum erat.

14. Estne hic equus nigerrimus ?

## 225. SAVING THE STANDARD.

Ibi in silvā Lūcius Cotta lēgātus ā Gallis interfectus est cum māgnā parte militum. Reliqui sē ad hiberna recēpērunt, ex quibus Lūcius Petrosidius, aquilifer, māgnō numerō hostium extrā vallum premēbātur. Aquilam intrā vallum pro-iēcit ; ipse māximā virtūte prō hibernis pūgnābat atque tandem interfectus est.

## 226. WORD-LIST.

**quam**, adverb used after an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, *than*.

**227.** (Translate these sentences in two ways, where possible.)

1. The sword which the hostage gave to the horse-man is longer than this one.

2. Who are more uncivilized than the Romans ? The Gauls are more uncivilized than they, but most uncivilized of all are the Germans.

3. Diviciacus was the freest of the chiefs of the Haedui, because he had not given his children as hostages to their enemies.

4. The men upon the wall are fewer than those who are in this gate.

5. He placed his camp upon the highest of the hills.

6. Is this road to the camp shorter than that (one) ?

7. The deepest river in Italy is the Padus.

8. Galba has a blacker horse than this horse.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES—CONTINUED.

**228.** The following adjectives form the **comparative** and **superlative irregularly** :

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	pēior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>large</i>	māior, maius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multi, -ae, -a, <i>many</i>		
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um

### **229.**

DECLENSION OF **plūs**, *more* (plural *more* or *many*).

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
NOM.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	——	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
ABL.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus
VOC.	——	(plūs)	(plūrēs	plūra)

**230.** Some adjectives are compared by means of adverbs :

**Idōneus**, *suitable*. **Magis idōneus**, *more suitable*. **Māximē idōneus**, *most suitable*.



## 231.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Multifold	Navigable	Partiality	Populate	Subterranean
Habitué	Numeral	Pertinent	Primeval	Tenacious

## 232.

1. Rōmānī hiberna propia **montēs** quam Gallī conlocāverant.

2. Certum numerum militum in hibernis tenuit atque equitēs, quōrum erat māgnus numerus in Galliā, ex hīs regiōnibus **obtinēbat**.

3. Caesar minor nātū erat quam Pompēius.

4. Optimī militēs interdum sunt pessimī hominēs, sed Caesar vir melior erat atque ācerrimus princeps.

5. Optimōs amāmus atque perterrēmur ā pessimīs.

6. Melius est amārī quam perterrēre, et nōn difficilius.

7. Quis hōrum puerōrum est aegerrimus? Hīc est aegrior illō.

8. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.

9. Helvētiī hāc ex parte **monte** altissimō **continentur**.

10. Hōc collī peditēs **continēbantur**.

11. Reliquam partem cōpiārum in hōc locō **continet**.

12. Haec silva ab Helvētiōrum regiōne ad terrās Dacōrum **pertinet**.

13. Mārcus est māior nātū et altior Sextō.

14. Mūrī hōrum hibernōrum sunt longiōrēs quam mūrī erant superiōre annō.

## 233.

## WORD-LIST.

**ob-tineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus**, *to possess.*

**con-tineō**, etc., *to hold together.* Passive also, *is bounded* (geographical term).

**per-tineō**, etc., *to extend.*

**mōns, montis**, m., *mountain.*

**234.**

1. Because the Helvetians possessed a land which was bounded by very high mountains, which extended in all directions, they tried to seize a new country more suitable to a people who were very brave.

2. The largest city of Italy is Rome.

3. Because his men were fewer than those of the enemy he hastened by very long marches to the mountains and placed a camp in a suitable place upon a rather high hill.

4. Most men have more courage than skill.

## LESSON XXXIX.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—CONTINUED.

**235.** Six adjectives in **-lis** are compared as follows :

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, <i>easy.</i>	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>hard.</i>	difficilior, difficilius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like.</i>	similior, similius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike.</i>	dissimilior, dissimilius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low.</i>	humilior, humilius	humillimus, a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender.</i>	gracilior, gracilius	gracillimus, -a, -um

**236.** The following form their **superlative** **irregularly** :

exterus, <sup>1</sup> <i>outward.</i>	exterior, <i>outer.</i>	extrēmus, } <i>outermost,</i> extimus, } <i>last.</i>
inferus, <sup>1</sup> <i>below.</i>	inferior, <i>lower.</i>	īnfimus, } <i>lowest.</i> īmus, }
posterus, <sup>1</sup> <i>following.</i>	posterior, <i>later.</i>	postrēmus, } <i>last.</i> postumus, }
superus, <sup>1</sup> <i>above.</i>	superior, <i>higher.</i>	suprēmus, } <i>highest.</i> summus, }

<sup>1</sup> Not used in the Nominative Singular Masculine.

**237.** The following have **no positive**, and form the comparative and superlative from other parts of speech :

citerior, <i>hither.</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost.</i>
interior, <i>inner.</i>	intimus, <i>inmost.</i>
prior, <i>former.</i>	primus, <i>first.</i>
propior, <i>nearer.</i>	proximus, <i>next.</i>
ulterior, <i>further.</i>	ultimus, <i>furthest, last.</i>

a. Do you remember any prepositions or adverbs from which these might be derived ?

**238.** ALLIED WORDS.

Barbarity	Navigation	Obtainable
Enumerate	Omnipresence	Summit
Laborious	Content	
Major	Navy	

**239.** 1. Hās urbēs in regiōnibus trāns flūmen primās **obtinerat.**

2. **Extrēmum** oppidum Allobrogum est **proximumque** Helvētiōrum terrīs Genāva.

3. Erat in Galliā ulteriōre ūna legiō.

4. **Primā** nocte **summus** collis **obtinēbātur.**

5. Complūrēs ex gladiis quī in mūrīs sunt **obtinēre** temptābat.

6. Belgae **pertinent** ad **inferiōrem** partem flūminis.

7. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad **montēs** et eam partem Oceanī quae est ad Hispāniam **pertinet.**

8. Galliam citeriōrem **montēs** Alpēs **continuērunt.**

9. Facile est tēla gladiōsque **obtinēre.**

10. Illud iter, quod inter altissimōs **montēs** atque flūmen erat, **obtinuit.**

11. Ex eā urbe silva ad Helvētiōs **pertinuit.**

12. Urbem litus **continēbat.**

13. Ab hōc locō collis **pertinuit** ad **proximum montem.**

14. Multi puerī māgnīs capitibus nōn sunt **superiōrēs** cōnsiliō.

## 240.

## WORD-LIST.

bonus, -a, -um, *good*; melior, melius, *better*; optimus, -a, -um, *best*.

māgnus, māior, māximus, *large, larger, largest*.

multus, plūs, plūrimus, *much, more, most*.

exterus, exterior, extrēmus or extimus, *outward, outer, outermost*.

īferus, inferior, īfimus or īmus, *below, lower, lowest*.

posterus, posterior, postrēmus, *following, later, last*.

superus, superior, summus or suprēmus, *above, higher, highest*.

prior, *former*; prīmus, *first*.

## 241.

1. Pompey's fleet, whose chief was a man of the greatest courage, was larger than Caesar's. Pompey had more soldiers than Caesar, but the majority of the latter's soldiers were much better than even the best soldiers in Pompey's legions.

2. On the following night he placed his baggage upon the top of the hill.

3. The Romans had a more difficult march than they had last year, because the enemy were holding the hills which were next to the shortest of the roads.

4. The last hill held by the enemy was the highest.

## LESSON XL.

### FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

**242. Latin adverbs** are formed from **adjectives**.

#### o STEMS.

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
longus, <i>long</i> .	longo-	longē, <i>far</i> .
miser, <i>wretched</i> .	misero-	miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> .

These change the **o** of the stem to **ē**.

#### i STEMS.

brevis, <i>short</i> .	brevi-	breviter, <i>briefly</i> .
âcer, <i>eager</i> .	âcri-	âcriter, <i>eagerly</i> .
sapiens, <i>wise</i> .	sapienti-	sapienter, <i>wisely</i> .

These add **ter** to the stem.

*a.* But notice that stems in **-nti** (sapienti-) drop **ti**.

**243.** The **accusative** and the **ablative neuter** of the **adjective** are also sometimes used as **adverbs**.

multus, <i>much</i> .	multum, <i>much</i> .
facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facile, <i>easily</i> .
primus, <i>first</i> .	primō, <i>at first</i> .
subitus, <i>sudden</i> .	subitō, <i>suddenly</i> .

#### **244.** ALLIED WORDS.

Ameliorate	Optimist	Superiority
Extremity	Plurality	Supremacy
Majority	Primitive	
Omniscience	Priority	



## 245.

## PUGNA PHARSALICA.

The battle of Pharsalia was probably the decisive battle in the struggle between Caesar and the Senate (170), although it did not seem so at the time to the enemies of the former, and was not so fiercely contested as the later battles in Africa and Spain. It thus probably ranks as one of the decisive battles of the world. (See also 467.)

## 246.

## I.

Pompēius, quī castra in - colle habēbat, ad - **īnfimās** - partēs - montis legiōnēs conlocābat. “In - hōc - locō **facile** victōriam obtinēbō,” dixit. Caesar, quoniam numerō multīs - partibus erat **īnferior**, suōs - milītēs continēbat, et in - idōneō - locō legiōnēs conlocābat.

Pompēi - amicīs, lēgātis - tribūnīsque, māgnū proeli - studium erat, sed id ei nōn grātum erat. Tandem studiō - amicōrum superātus - est, pūgnāreque - parāvit.

Interim Caesar castra movēre - constituit, atque signum dedit, iamque illi quōs primōs in - agmine conlocāverat in - portis - castrōrum erant. Sed eō - ipsō - tempore legiōnēs - Pompēi longē ā - vallō - suōrum - castrōrum movēbant et pūgnāre - parāre - vidēbantur. Id Caesar vidit atque oppūgnāre - parāvit.

Pompēius in - sinistrā - parte legiōnēs - II conlocāverat: in - eō - locō ipse erat. Medium - locum Scipiō cum - legiōnibus - Syriacīs tenēbat. Ūna - legiō cum - **cohortibus** - Hispānīs in - dextrā - parte erat - conlocāta. Numerō **cohortēs** CX erant. Hae erant milia XLV. Reliquās **cohortēs** VII in castris castellisque conlocāverat. Omnēs equitēs, quī optima arma habēbant, sagittārii funditōrēsque, in sinistrā parte erant.

Caesar ūnam legiōnem in dextrā parte conlocāvit. **Co**hortēs LXXX habēbat, quae summa erat milia XXII. **Co**hortēs II in castris erant. Ipse contrā Pompēium erat.

## 247.

## WORD-LIST.

cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort*, the tenth part of a legion.

longē, *far*; bene, *well*; facile, *easily*.

multum, or multō, *much*; subitō, *suddenly, unexpectedly*.

celeriter, *quickly*.

## 248.

The last hill which the enemy were holding was suddenly attacked by the Romans at night. This hill was rather high, and the most of those soldiers who first attacked, because they were in a lower position than the enemy, were wounded by the latter, whose swords were much longer than theirs. But the tribune greatly surpassed the enemy in skill. He easily seized the next hill, which was not far distant<sup>1</sup> and much higher than that which the enemy were holding. Because of this the enemy quickly retreated to a place nearer to their (own) camp.

<sup>1</sup> To be distant, *ab-esse*.

## LESSON XLI.

249.

### COMPARING OF ADVERBS.

#### MODELS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
âcritèr, <i>eagerly</i> .	âcrius.	âcerrimē.
miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> .	miserius.	miserrimē.
bene, <i>well</i> .	melius.	optimē.
male, <i>badly</i> .	pēius.	pessimē.
multum, <i>much</i> .	plūs.	plūrimē.
—	minus, <i>less</i> .	minimē.
—	magis, <i>more</i> .	māximē.

*a.* What case-ending of the **adjective** is used to form the **comparative** of the **adverb**?

*b.* How is the **superlative** formed from the **superlative** of the **adjective**? (Cp. 219.)

*c.* Form adverbs from these adjectives, and compare them: aeger (aegro-), *sick*; prūdēns (prūdenti-), *wise*; liber (libero-); similis (simili-), *like*; levis (levi-), *light*.

250.

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Benefit	Mountain	Primer
Celerity	Optimistic	Omnivorous
Extreme	Pertain	
Facile	Plural	

#### PŪGNA PHARSALICA.—II.

251. Quoniam equitēs - Pompēi contrā - dextram - partem complūrēs erant, celeriter cohortēs - VI Caesar monuit, "Cum - equitibus pugnātôte. Capita - eōrum tēlis vulne-

räre - temptâtôte; ita celerius perterrêbuntur." Hôrum - equitum - multi adolescentês, civês - Rômânî, pulcherrimis - comîs, erant.

Signum datum est atque nostrî - militês in - legiônês - Pompêi contendêbant. Primum tâlis, deinde gladiis, pûgnâre - parâbant. Eô - tempore equitês â sinistrâ Pompêi - parte in - nostrôs - equitês contendêbant. Nostrî sê recêpêrunt, equitêsque Pompêi hîc âcrius nostrôs militês â parte apertâ superâre temptâvêrunt. Tum Caesar cohortibus VI signum dedit, hique in eôs celeriter contendêrunt.

Equitês Pompêi perterrêbantur, atque fugâ in montês altissimôs contendêbant. Omnês sagittârii funditôrêsq̃ue interfecti sunt. Nostrî cohortês VI militês Pompêi quî in sinistrâ parte pûgnâbant circumivêrunt. Quoniam ex duâbus partibus â nostris oppûgnâbantur, fugâ sê servâre contendêbant.

**252.** Compare the adverbs learned in 247. Notice also the following: **melius, minus, plûs, mâximê, minimê.**

## 253

### POMPEY'S PLAN OF ATTACK AT PHARSALUS.

Pompey said<sup>1</sup> to the leaders of his horsemen, "You will<sup>2</sup> of a sudden attack the horsemen who are opposite our left hand. Because you are more numerous and have better arms than they you will easily terrify them. Then (99, N. 2) you will quickly attack the foot-soldiers on their exposed flank.<sup>3</sup> They will at that time be fighting with our legions.

Because they will thus be attacked from two directions at one (125) time, they will become frightened and will hasten to save themselves by flight."

<sup>1</sup> **dixit.**

<sup>2</sup> Imperative mood.

<sup>3</sup> **pars.**

## LESSON XLII.

**254.**

### ALLIED WORDS.

Contention	Malcontent	Omnipotent
Contentment	Mountainous	Petition
Defense	Multiplex	
Facility	Nostrum	

**255.**

### PŪGNA PHARSALICA.—III.

Tum Pompēius in - sua - castra ex - equō **contendit**, atque iis quōs ad - portam conlocāverat dicit, “Castra **dēfendite** diligenter.” Castra ā - cohortibus, quae ibi conlocātae - erant, **vērō** diligenter **dēfenduntur**; **multō** ācrius ā - Thracibus - barbarisque - auxiliis. Nam qui ex - proeliō ad - castra milites **contendunt magis** reliquā - fugā sē servāre quam castra **dēfendere - petunt**. Tandem omnēs tēlis superantur, atque cum - ducibus centuriōnibus - tribūnisque - militum altissimum - montem quī ad - castra pertinet occupāre - **petunt**. Quoniam is - mōns est sine - aquā, locum quī prope - flūmen est tum occupāre - **petunt**.

Caesar partem suārum cōpiarum in castris Pompēi, partemque in suis castris conlocat, atque cum legiōnibus IIII ad hunc locum properat. **Nostrī**<sup>1</sup> labōre sunt dēfessī, et nox prope est, tamen milites Pompēi nocte aquam **petere** prohibent. Paucī nocte fugā se servāre **petunt**; reliqui in dēditionem sē Caesarī dant.

Signa ex proeliō ad eum portantur CLXXX et aquilae VIII.

Interim Pompēius ad litus **contendēbat** et nāve terram Aegyptum **petēbat** atque ad urbem Alexandrium vēnit. Ibi

<sup>1</sup> I.e. Caesar's.



rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer quī magnīs cōpiīs sorōrem Cleopatrem in bellō superāre temptābat. Amīcī rēgis hūius hīs quī ā Pompēiō vērunt **gratissimē** respondērunt, tamen Pompēium interficere **petēbant**. Ille ignorāns ex nāve ex-ivit cum paucis suis et interfectus est.

FINIS.

## 256.

### WORD-LIST.

noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*.

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus, *to strive, to hasten, sometimes, to fight*.

petō, petere, petīvī, petītus, *to seek, beg, demand*.

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēsus, *to defend*.

## 257.

### HOW CAESAR THWARTED POMPEY'S PLAN AT PHARSALUS.

Caesar saw the horsemen of Pompey opposite his own right end (251). He quickly said to the leaders of VI cohorts, "If (146, N. 3) yonder horsemen shall get the best of the horsemen who will be defending our left end, you will defend the rest of our soldiers."

Pompey's horsemen easily terrify Caesar's horsemen, and then<sup>1</sup> eagerly hasten against the exposed flank<sup>2</sup> of the legion. Those VI cohorts suddenly attack them with their swords, and greatly terrify them. They then attack the legions of Pompey upon their unprotected end. Thus Caesar's soldiers overcame Pompey by means of the very plan by which Pompey tried to overcome them.

<sup>1</sup> tum.

<sup>2</sup> See 251, second paragraph.



## LESSON XLIII.

### THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN ĪŌ.

**capiō, faciō, fugiō, iaciō** and their Compounds.<sup>1</sup>

**258.** Learn all the tenses of the Indicative, the Present Imperative, and the Present Infinitive, Active and Passive, of **capiō** (484).

Compare these tenses of **capiō** with the tenses of **regō**, and note the differences.

**259.** 1. Capiēbātis, capiēbāminī. 2. Capit, capiēbat, capiet. 3. Capiunt, capiēbant, capient. 4. Capior, capis, caperis. 5. Capiēbar, capimur, cēpī. 6. Capiar, capimus, capere. 7. Cape, captae erāmus, captus sum. 8. Cēperāmus, cēperis.

a. Inflect in the same way **faciō**, *make*, and **fugiō**, *flee*.

**260.**

#### EXAMPLES.

**Quīnque annōs bellum gerēbātur.** *War was carried on for five years.*

**Collis centum pedēs ab-est.** *The hill is a hundred feet distant.*

a. The accusative **annōs** expresses duration of time, the accusative **pedēs** extent of space. They answer the question **how long?** and **how far?**

Accusative of Time  
and Space.

**261. RULE.—Duration of Time and Extent of Space** are expressed by the **Accusative**.

<sup>1</sup> These are the most common of the verbs of this class.

## 262.

## CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.

The following is the account of the closing operations of Caesar's first campaign in Spain (compare 170), before the battle of Pharsalia (245). The incident given in 214 occurred during this campaign.

Afranius, the general who is opposing Caesar, has decided to leave the region of Ilerda, since his supplies are almost exhausted, and marching southward to make a fresh stand in a more favorable region. If Caesar can gain possession of a pass over the mountains which Afranius must cross, he can prevent this movement and perhaps starve his foes into a surrender. The camp of Afranius is situated between Caesar's camp and the pass. The two camps are in sight of each other, and it seems impossible for Caesar to seize the pass in advance of Afranius.

## 263.

## I.

Caesar cum omnibus cōpiis ex castris ex-īvit, māgnōque circuitū sine certō itinere exercitum **dūxit**. Hōc Afrānī militēs vidērunt et laetissimī erant. “Vidē,” **dixērunt**, “inopiā frūmentī Caesar fugit atque ad urbem Ilerdam rūrsus suōs militēs ducit.” Sed paulātim ad dextram agmen Caesar **dūcēbat** et brevī tempore primī superāverant regiōnem eōrum castrōrum et iam prope montem fuerant. Tum vērō celeriter omnēs cōpiās ex castris Afrānius **dūxit**, rectōque ad montēs itinere contendit.

Exercitum Caesaris viārum difficultātēs, Afrānī cōpiās **equitātūs** Caesaris tardābant. Ad montem prior agmen Caesaris vēnit atque ibi contrā exercitum Afrānī militēs conlocāti sunt. Tum vērō et ab **equitātū** novissimum agmen Afrānī exercitūs premēbātur, et ante sē legiōnēs Caesaris vidēbat. Ad collem Afrānius exercitum **dūxit** atque ibi legiōnēs suās conlocāvit.

264.

## WORD-LIST.

equitātus, -us, m., *cavalry*.dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *to lead*.dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *to say*.

265.

The enemy tried to seize the gate<sup>1</sup> by night, and thus to lead their forces into the city, but the leader of the men who were in the city quickly hastened to the gate. He wounded a few of the enemy, and thus frightened the rest. They did not attack him during the remainder of the night. During the whole of the next day, with a few men, he was keeping the enemy away from the gate. At length,<sup>2</sup> by night, the enemy, wearied, retreated.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> porta.<sup>2</sup> tandem.<sup>3</sup> sē recēpit.

## LESSON XLIV.

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

**266.** Nouns of this declension are **feminine**, except **diēs**, which is **masculine**.

a. **Diēs** is sometimes feminine in the singular.

**267.** Very few nouns belong to this declension, but some of those which do are frequently used, especially **aciēs**, **diēs**, and **rēs**.

**268.** **diēs**, *day*.  
stem **diē**.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
NOM.	<b>diēs</b>	NOM.	<b>diēs</b>
GEN.	<b>diēi</b>	GEN.	<b>diērum</b>
DAT.	<b>diēi</b>	DAT.	<b>diēbus</b>
ACC.	<b>diēm</b>	ACC.	<b>diēs</b>
ABL.	<b>diē</b>	ABL.	<b>diēbus</b>
VOC.	<b>(diēs)</b>	VOC.	<b>(diēs)</b>

**269.** ALLIED WORDS.

Abduct	Conduct	Dictum
Continue	Conductor	Prediction
Contrary	Defender	
Conduce	Diction	

**270.** CAESAR ET AFRANIUS.—II.

Ex eo loco, ubi suum exercitum conlocāverat, IV cohortes in eum montem quī ibi erat altissimus Afrānius misit. Hunc magnō cursū hārum cohortum occupāre petivit. Hās

cohortēs quae ad hunc montem properābant equitātus Caesaris ex omnibus partibus oppugnāvit, omnēsque in conspectū exercituum ab eō interfecti sunt.

Quoniam equitātus ita **proelium commiserat**, atque **rem** ita bene gesserat, ad Caesarem celeriter lēgātī, centuriōnēs, tribūnique militum vērunt. Dixērunt, “In conspectū omnis exercitūs Afrānī hae cohortēs interfectae sunt. Perterrētur eius exercitus; proelium cum tuis legiōnibus nōn sustinēbunt. Nōn dubitā **proelium committere**. Ita celeriter victōria nōbis erit.”

Hōc cōnsilium suōrum tamen Caesari nōn grātum fuit. **Proelium non commisit**. “Nōn **proelium committam**,” dixit, “nam in pugnā mei militēs vulnerābuntur. Sine pugnā hanc **rem** bene geram, nam ā frūmentō Afrānium prohibui.”

Cōnsilium Caesaris militibus nōn grātum fuit, tamen paulum ex eō locō ex-ivit.

Tum Afrānius in castris suōs conlocāvit.

## 271. WORD LIST.

Rēs, rei, f., *thing, state of affairs*.

**Committō, committere, commisi, commissus**, *to bring together*. With **proelium**, *to begin the battle*.

## 272.

After the whole of Gaul had been overcome by Caesar, the Gauls again (81, N. 2) fought with him. They harassed him for a long time, and kept him from (securing) grain. At length he attempted to retreat (cp. 178, N. 2) into the province.<sup>1</sup> The Gauls had very many horsemen, and did not hesitate to begin battle with Caesar. But Caesar had already<sup>2</sup> sent secretly<sup>3</sup> to the Germans,<sup>4</sup> who sent him a great number of horsemen. After the Gauls had begun the battle the German cavalry was sent against them, and quickly brought the matter to a successful issue.

<sup>1</sup> prōvincia.

<sup>2</sup> iam

<sup>3</sup> clam.

<sup>4</sup> Not dative.



## LESSON XLV.

### SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

**273.** Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive of **sum** (486) and of the active and passive of **amō** (480), **moneō** (481), **regō** (482), and **capiō** (484).

*a.* In the same way inflect these tenses of **parō**, **pūgnō**, **videō**, **perterreō**, **dūcō** and **mittō**.

### **274.** THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. This Mood is used **chiefly in Subordinate clauses.**

*a.* All subordinate clauses, however, do not take the Subjunctive.

*b.* The Latin Subjunctive has no relation to the English Subjunctive, nor should it be thought of as being generally similar to the English Potential ("might," "would").

2. The so-called Present and Imperfect tenses have exactly the **same meaning** in nearly all subordinate clauses. They denote **incompleted action**, past, present, or future.

**275. Incompleted action** represents the action of the verb in the subordinate clause as **still going on** at the time to which the sentence refers.

**Incompleted  
Action.**

The "time to which the sentence refers" is the time denoted by the **main verb** of the sentence.

*a.* The English and Latin **indicative** tenses of incompleted action are :

*I was carrying, Portābam* (Latin Imperfect).

*I am carrying, Portō* (Latin Present).

*I shall be carrying, Portābō* (Latin Future).



**276.** Never think of the Present Subjunctive as denoting incompleted action in present time only, like the Present Indicative, or of the Imperfect Subjunctive as denoting incompleted action in past time only, like the Imperfect Indicative. The names "Present" and "Imperfect" are very misleading in this respect.

RULE FOR USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**277.** If the main verb of the sentence denotes **present** or **future** time, use the **present subjunctive**.

If the main verb of the sentence denotes **past** time, use the **imperfect subjunctive**.

**278.**

EXAMPLES.

*Sē parant 'ut pūgnent, They prepare themselves that they may fight (so that they may fight, so as to fight, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, to fight, for the purpose of fighting).*

*Sē parābant ut pūgnārent, They prepared themselves that they might fight, etc.*

*Lēgātōs mittunt nē oppidum oppūgnētur, They send envoys in order that the town may not be attacked, that the town may not be attacked, lest the town be attacked.*

*Lēgātōs mīserunt nē oppidum oppūgnārētur, They sent envoys in order that the town should not be attacked.*

Clauses  
Expressing  
Purpose.

a. Notice that the clauses introduced by **ut** or **nē** express the **purpose** or **intention** of the subjects of the principal clauses.

b. Notice that **ut** introduces a **positive**, **nē** a **negative**, purpose.

c. Notice that the verbs in the clauses expressing **purpose** are in the **subjunctive**, and conform to the rule. (277.)

d. Notice the various expressions by which **ut** and **nē** may be translated.

**279. RULE.**—**Purpose** is expressed by **ut** and **nē** with the **subjunctive**.

a. The **infinitive** is **never** to be used in Latin to express **purpose** as it is in English.

**280.**

## ALLIED WORDS.

Adduce

Induce

Reduce

Deduce

Introduce

Traduce

Deduct

Introduction

Educe

Produce

**281.**

1. Ad silvam properābit ut victōriam obtineat.
2. Dēfessī principēs labōrāvērunt ut urbs dēfenderētur.
3. Ut via dēfenderētur ad portam urbis properāvimus.
4. Bonī principēs bene pūgnāvērunt ut victōriam haberent.
5. Porta ā paucīs hominibus dēfendētur ut mūrus ā plūribus teneātur.
6. Nē pater dēfessus sit, puerī quī eum amant auxilium dabunt.
7. Nē peditēs vulnerentur equitātus ut eōs dēfendat properat.
8. Quīnque cohortēs mittet ut mūrum oppūgnet.
9. Nē nocte labōrēmus contendēmus.
10. Ex urbe cōpiās dūcere temptat ut eīs auxilium mittat.
11. Ex castrīs principem prohibet ut vulnerētur.
12. Hōc locum occupat ut celerius ad suōs contendat.
13. Multās cōpiās habet et bellum geret.
14. Lēgātōs mittam ut auxilium petam.
15. Cōpiās in castrīs tenet, sed brevī tempore peditēs ad montem dūcet, et hostem oppūgnābit.
16. Pūgnātis ut liberōs dēfendātis.

**282.**

1. He will lead these troops into the winter camp, so that he may defend it easily.

2. He led a cohort into the winter camp, in order that he might defend it more easily.

3. He sent help to the cohort, in order that it might more quickly seize the hill.

4. He is preparing great forces, lest he be overcome.

5. He will hasten to the town, lest he be wounded.

6. He left his baggage in the winter camp, so that his soldiers should not have a hard time (86) from want of horses.

## LESSON XLVI.

### 283. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

#### FIRST PERSON.

**Ego, I.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM.	ego	nōs
GEN.	meī	nostrūm or nostri
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs
ACC.	mē	nōs
ABL.	mē	nōbīs

#### SECOND PERSON.

**Tū, thou.**

NOM.	tū	vōs
GEN.	tuī	vestrum or vestri
DAT.	tibi	vōbīs
ACC.	tē	vōs
ABL.	tē	vōbīs

#### THIRD PERSON.

**Sui, of himself, herself, itself.**

NOM.	—	—
GEN.	suī	suī
DAT.	sibi	sibi
ACC.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē
ABL.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē

a. Notice that **suī** is **reflexive**; that is, like **suus** (191), it refers only to the **subject of the sentence**, or (sometimes) **of the clause**.

b. **Is, ea, id** (100) and sometimes **hīc** and **ille** (93) are used for the **personal pronoun** of the **third person** when **not reflexive**.

**284.****EXAMPLES.**

**Ego sum altus, tū es parvus,** *I am tall, you are small.*

**Omnēs sē (or sēsē) laudant,** *They are all praising themselves.*

**Amīcus mēcum manēbit,** *My friend will stay with me.*

**Quis vestrū sē nōn recēpit?** *Who of you did not retreat?*

a. Notice in the first sentence that the subjects **ego** and **tū** are expressed. They are **usually omitted** except for emphasis or contrast.

b. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons often have a **reflexive** sense: **Tū tē laudas,** *Thou praisest thyself.* **Omnēs nōs laudāmus,** *We are all praising ourselves.*

**285.****POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.**

**meus, -a, -um,** *my, mine.*

**tuus, -a, -um,** *thy, thine, your (sing.), yours.*

**suus, -a, -um,** *his, hers, its, their, theirs.* (Reflexive 191.)

**noster, -tra, -trum,** *our, ours.*

**vester, -tra, -trum,** *your (plu.) yours.*

a. **Tuus** refers to **one** person:

**Mārce, tuum amīcum vīdī, et, tuōs equōs habuit,** *Marcus, I saw your friend, and he had your horses.*

**Vester** refers to **more than one** person:

**Militēs, vestrōs tribūnōs vidēō, sed ubi est vester lēgātus?** *Soldiers, I see your lieutenants, but where is your general?*

b. Notice that the word "*your*" translates both **tuus** and **vester**.

## 286.

## EXAMPLES.

**Nōs quī militēs sumus eum laudāmus, sed vōs, quī lē-gātī estis, culpātis, We, who are soldiers, praise him, but you, who are generals, blame him.**

*a.* Notice that the first **quī**, because it refers to **nōs**, is the subject of a verb in the **first** person, **sumus**; and that the second **quī**, which refers to **vōs**, is the subject of **estis**, a verb in the **second** person.

## 287.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Aqueduct	Express	Predicate
Viaduct	Impress	Predictive
Captor	Repress	
Compress	Commit	

## 288.

## CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—III.

Caesar militēs in montibus prope Afrānī castra castraque sua conlocāvit. Posterō **diē** principēs exercitus Afrānī, quoniam in complūribus partibus **premēbantur**, perturbāti sunt, atque dē hīs rēbus cōsiliū **cēpērunt**. In cōsiliō eīs nūntiātur, “**Quī aquam** petunt ab equitātū Caesaris **prementur**.” Quam ob rem in viā quae ad **aquam** pertinuit equitēs **legiōnāriāsque** cohortēs conlocāvērunt, et posterum **diem** vallum ex castrīs ad **aquam** dūcere temptāvērunt ut intrā vallum **aquam** peterent atque nōn ab equitātū **premerentur**. Hōs diēs tamen inopiā frūmenti **premēbantur**; **aquam** aegrē petēbant. Frūmenti cōpiam parvam **legiōnāriī** militēs habēbant, sed auxiliīs nōn fuit, et eā causā māgnus eōrum numerus omne hōc tempus ad Caesarem veniēbant, atque sē ei dabant. Tandem Afrānius ad oppidum Ilerdam rūsus properāre temptāvit, et ex castrīs ex iuit. Caesar equitātum mīsit, ut novissimum agmen **premerētur**; ipse ex castrīs **legiōnāriōs** militēs dūxit, ut equitātūi auxilium daret.



289.

## WORD-LIST.

aqua, aquae, *water*. diēs, diēī, m. and f., *day*.  
 legiōnārius, -a, -um, *belonging to a legion, legionary*.  
 premō, premere, pressī, pressus, *to press to harass*.  
 capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *to take*.

290.

(Use whatever words you think will express the sense of the following lines, which are taken from Macaulay's "*Battle of Lake Regillus*.'")

## THE CHALLENGE.

Mamilius spied Herminius  
 And dashed across<sup>1</sup> the way;  
 "Herminius, I have sought thee  
 Through many a bloody day.  
 One of us two, Herminius,  
 Shall never<sup>2</sup> more go home.<sup>3</sup>  
 I will lay on for<sup>4</sup> Tusculum,  
 And lay thou on for Rome."

291.

## REVIEW WORD-LIST.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
exterus, -a, -um	exterior, -ius	extrēmus, -a, -um
īferus, -a, -um	īferior, -ius	īfimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um	māior, -ius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	— plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
posterus, -a, -um	posterior, -ius	postrēmus, -a, -um
superus, -a, -um	superior, -ius	summus, -a, -um
		(suprēmus, -a, -um)
	prior, -ius	prīmus, -a, -um

<sup>1</sup> *Crossed*, *trāns-ivit*. <sup>2</sup> 119, N. 4. <sup>3</sup> Perhaps these two lines might be paraphrased, "*His city shall never more see one of us*. <sup>4</sup> *prō*."

obtinēō	obtinēre	obtinui	obtensus
contineō	continēre	continui	contentus
pertineō	pertinēre	pertinui	———
capiō	capere	cēpi	captus
committō	committere	commisi	commissus
contendō	contendere	contendi	contentus
dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendi	dēfensus
dicō	dicere	dixi	dictus
dūcō	dūcere	dūxi	ductus
gerō	gerere	gessi	gestus
mittō	mittere	miſi	missus
petō	petere	petivi	petitus
premō	premere	pressi	pressus

aqua, aquae

bene

celeriter

cohors, cohortis

facile

mōns, montis

longē

equitātus, -ūs

multum, multō

exercitus, -ūs

subitō

rēs, rēi

legiōnārius, -a, -um

noster, nostra, nostrum

contrā

suus, -a, -um

## LESSON XLVII.

### READING LESSON.

292.

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Aquarium

Fact

Irrepressible

Capture

Impetuous

Position

Deduction

Induction

Depository

Inexpressible

293.

#### CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—IV.

Equitātus noster in novissimum agmen exercitūs Afrānī **impetus faciēbat**. Nōn multum spatium Afrānius eō diē iter **fēcit**, atque quoniam **impetibus** equitātūs premēbātur montem altum cēpit ibique castra **ponere** vidēbātur. Postquam Caesar castra **posuerat** atque equitēs in agrōs mīserat ut frumentum caperent atque equīs suis darent, Afrānius rūsus subito iter **facere** temptāvit. Sed Caesar cum legiōnāriīs ē castrīs in eum properāvit ; in castrīs impedimenta atque paucās cohortēs reliquit. Celeriter equitātus quoque vēnit. Ācritēr **impetum** in novissimum agmen **fēcit**. Complūrēs legiōnāriī militēs, etiam centuriōnes, interfecti sunt.

Tum vērō exercitus Afrānī rūsus castra **posuit**. Haec castra in locō quī longē ab aquā ā-fuit **posita sunt**. Caesar **impetum** nōn **faciēbat**, sed eō diē tabernācula in suis castrīs nōn **posuit**, ut aut nocte aut diē celerius in eōs **impetum faceret**. Posterum diem in castrīs suōs Afrānius tenēbat. Primā nocte ut aquam peteret nōn ex-īvit, sed proximō diē paucās cohortēs in castrīs reliquit atque omnēs reliquās cōpiās ad

aquam dūxit. Tamen eam diem frūmentum ex agris ut equis darent capere nōn temptāvit.

**294.****WORD-LIST:**

**impetus, impetūs, m.,** *an attack.*

**faciō, facere, fēcī, factus,** *to make, do.*

**ponō, ponere, posuī, positus,** *to place.*

**295.**

1. For many days he tried to take the town.
2. He takes the sons of the chiefs as hostages, in order that they may not wage war upon him.
3. He placed his camp upon the highest hill, in order not to be attacked.
4. Caesar hurries to Spain to attack Afranius.
5. The cavalry attacked the rear rank of the army, in order that it should not march a great distance upon that day.
6. He went out of the camp in order to lead his forces to water.
7. He kept his men in the winter quarters for many days, lest the enemy should see them.
8. At what time will you see him ?

## LESSON XLVIII.

### NUMERALS.

**296.** Learn the cardinals (479).

**297.**

**Ūnus, one.**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
GEN.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō
VOC.	(ūnus	ūna	ūnum)

**Duo, two.**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
VOC.	(duo	duae	duo)

**Trēs, three.**

	M. AND F.	NEUT.
NOM.	trēs	tria
GEN.	trium	trium
DAT.	tribus	tribus
ACC.	trēs	tria
ABL.	tribus	tribus
VOC.	(trēs	tria)

Plural of **Mille, thousand.**

milia
mīlium
mīlibus
milia
mīlibus
(mīlia)

*a.* The declension of **ūnus** has been referred to before (125).

**298.** The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** are indeclinable.

The hundreds (excepting **centum**) are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

**Centum** and **mille** in the singular are indeclinable.

## 299.

## EXAMPLES.

**Sex** mīlitēs sunt in castrīs, *Six soldiers are in the camp.*

**Ā sex** militibus oppūgnātus est, *He was assailed by six soldiers.* Use of  
Numerals.

**Trīgintā** tribus mīlitibus dōna dedit, *He gave gifts to thirty-three soldiers.*

**Mille** equitēs ad eum contendunt, *A thousand horsemen hasten to him.*

**Quīnque** mīlia equitum ad eum contendunt, *Five thousand horsemen hasten to him.*

a. Notice in the fourth sentence that **mille** (the singular) takes the same construction as the other cardinals (like **sex** in the first), but that **mīlia** (the plural) in the fifth sentence is a (neuter) **noun**, followed by the **genitive**.

b. This is called a **partitive genitive**, because it denotes the whole of which a part is taken. Other examples of this genitive, which has been frequently used in preceding exercises, are **pars frūmentī, paucī militum**. Partitive  
Genitive.

c. Notice in the third sentence that a declinable cardinal is inflected even when it stands with an indeclinable one.

## 300.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Century	Dual	Trio
Circumnavigate	Factor	Unit
Co-operation	Repression	
Deposit	September	

## 301.

## CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—V.

Caesar interim vallum circum castra exercitūs Afrānī dūcere temptābat. Diēs duōs haec **opera** cōsiliaque geruntur ; tertiō diē māgna pārs **operis** perfecta erat. Illi ut Caesarem ex **opere** prohibeant sīgnum dant **aciemque** **īnstruunt**. Caesar ex **opere** legiōnāriōs mīlitēs re-vocat **aciemque** **īnstruit**.



**Aciēs** quam Afrānius **īnstrūxerat** legiōnum quīnque erat; Caesaris primam **aciem** cohortēs ex quīnque legiōnibus tenēbant.

Nōn amplius pedum milibus duōbus ab illōrum castris castra Caesaris **ab-sunt**, cūius spatī partēs duās **aciēs** quae **īnstructae sunt** tenent, tertia ad impetum militum relinquitur, ut facilis fuga militibus Afrānī sit. Hāc causā Caesar pūgnāre nōn temptat. Afrānius quōque nōn pūgnāre sed ex **opere** legiōnāriōs Caesaris prohibēre temptat. Ad noctem **aciēs** ita continentur.

## 302.

## WORD-LIST.

<b>aciēs</b> , <b>aciēī</b> , f., <i>line of battle.</i>	<b>īnstruō</b> , <b>īnstruere</b> , <b>īnstrūxi</b> ,
<b>opus</b> , <b>operis</b> , n., <i>work.</i>	<b>īnstrūctus</b> , <i>to construct.</i>
<b>ab-sum</b> , <b>ab-esse</b> , <b>ā-fui</b> , <i>to</i>	<b>Of troops</b> , <i>to draw up.</i>
<i>be distant or absent.</i>	

**303.** The Gauls were attacking the winter camp for ten days. There were only<sup>1</sup> three cohorts in it, so that the gate which was the nearest to the enemy was defended by not more than two hundred soldiers. Thirty of these were killed, and a hundred and five wounded. The legate himself hastened to the gate with twenty-two more soldiers, of whom five were wounded in a short time. Nevertheless<sup>2</sup> he defended the gate with so<sup>3</sup> much bravery that the enemy retreated (178, N. 2) by night. During this day five hundred Romans and two thousand of the enemy were killed (141, N. 5).

<sup>1</sup> tantum.<sup>2</sup> tamen.<sup>3</sup> tam.

## LESSON XLIX.

**304.** Learn the first twenty-one ordinals (479).

**305.**

### ALLIED WORDS.

Cent	Mural	Summit
December	Product	Unify
Duel	Pugnacious	
Decimal	Quart	

**306.**

### CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—VI.

Posterò diē Caesar **vallum** dūcere rūsus paravit ; illi trāns flūmen quod nōn longē ā-fuit cōpiās dūcere temptābant. Celeriter Caesar Germānōs equitumque partem trāns flūmen mīsit, ut ab hāc rē eōs prohibēret.

Tandem, quoniam ita ab omnibus rēbus prohibēbantur, atque māgna aquae frūmentique inopia erat, tam premēbantur ut conloquium peterent. Datus est obsidis locō Caesarī tilius Afrāni.

In hōc conloquiō Afrānius sē suumque exercitum in dēditionem Caesarī dedit.

**307.**

Pompey led one hundred and ten cohorts and seven thousand horsemen from his camp to wage battle with Caesar at the place Pharsalia. He had forty five thousand men. He himself with two legions held one wing (199). Caesar led eighty cohorts from his camp, and had twenty five thousand men. He himself, with the soldiers of one legion, was opposite Pompey. In this battle two hundred of Caesar's soldiers, with thirty centuries, were killed (141, N. 5). Of Pompey's soldiers more than ten thousand were killed.

## LESSON L.

308.

EXAMPLES.

*Militēs ita fortēs sunt ut impetum faciant, The soldiers are so brave that they make an attack.*

*Militēs ita fortēs fuērunt ut impetum facerent, The soldiers were so brave that they made an attack.*

*Is miles ā tribus Gallīs oppūgnātus est, ut vulnerāretur, This soldier was attacked by three Gauls, so that he was wounded.*

Subjunctive  
of Result.

*Hīc miles tam fortis est ut nōn ā Gallīs perterreātur, This soldier is so brave that he is not frightened by the Gauls.*

*a.* Notice that the clauses introduced by **ut** and **ut nōn** all express a **result**.

*b.* Notice that a **negative result** is introduced by **ut nōn**. How is a negative purpose introduced?

309.

**RULE.**—The **result** of an action is expressed by the **subjunctive** with **ut** and **ut nōn**.

310.

ALLIED WORDS.

Aquatic	Inductive	Operate
Caption	Instruction	Press
Exposition	Interdiction	
Factory	Impetuosity	

311.

1. Miles tam dēfessus erat ut ad urbem Ilerdam mitterētur.
2. Quis nostrōrum perterrētur ut nōn aciem instruat?
3. Contendit ad silvās ut nōn ab hostibus caperētur.
4. Contendit ad urbem nē ab hostibus capiātur.

5. Nōs urbem tam diligenter dēfendimus ut nōn capiātur.
6. Flūmen vigintī pedēs altum fuit.
7. Caesar quīquāgintā sex annōs vīxit.
8. Mōns decem mīlia pedum altum est.
9. Quis nātus est centēsīmō annō ante Christum nātum?  
Nōne Caesar est?

10. Ut in Caesarem bellum gerant hominum mīlia centum Bellovacī habent, atque ex eō numerō sexāgintā dabunt. Suesiōnēs oppida habent duodecim, et hominum quīquāgintā dabunt, quindecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī decem mīlia, Morinī vigintī et quīque mīlia, Menapii septem mīlia, Velocassī decem mīlia, Caeroesī cum reliquis ad quadrāgintā mīlia.

#### SUMMA HELVETIŌRUM.

11. Omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiŏrum mīlia duo centum et sexāgintā trēs; Tulingŏrum mīlia et trīgintā sex; Latovicŏrum quattuordecim; Rauracŏrum trēs et vīgintī; Bŏiŏrum duo et trīgintā; ex his quī arma habēbant ad mīlia nŏnāgintā duo.

#### 312.

1. He worked all the time, so as to have plenty of grain.
2. He works with eagerness, so that he has a supply of grain.
3. He defended himself with the greatest bravery, so that he was not captured.
4. He sent help to the town, so that it was not taken.
5. He will send footmen to the camp, so that it may not be taken.
6. He sent a legion to the winter camp, so that it should not be taken.
7. He sent a cohort to the hill, so that it was not taken by the enemy.
8. The legions are so many that the legate placed some of them in one camp, and some in another (126).

## LESSON LI.

**313.** Learn the indicative, the present infinitive, and the present and imperfect subjunctive of **possum** (486).

*a.* To inflect the present, imperfect and future of **possum** prefix **pot-** to the forms of **sum**, remembering that **pot** becomes **pos** before **s**, and that the **es** of **essem** is dropped in the imperfect subjunctive.

*b.* The perfect, pluperfect and future perfect drop the **f** of **fuī**, etc.

**314.**

ALLIED WORDS.

Barbarity	Impossible	Sign
Cogent	October	Unite
Decimate	Quarter	
Military	Relinquish	

**315.**

BACULUS CENTURIŌ.

During Caesar's wars in Gaul (170) the Eburones, a tribe living next to the Rhine, treacherously ambushed a Roman force of about six thousand men, which was wintering among them, and totally destroyed it. The incident described in 225 occurred during the fight.

The following summer Caesar attacked the Eburones with an overwhelming force. They did not attempt to resist, but took refuge in the woods and swamps. Caesar left his baggage in a camp at Aduatuca, and scattered his troops in small divisions over the country. But the Roman soldiers found it hard and dangerous work to hunt the Eburones from their hiding-places;



consequently Caesar announced that any of the neighboring Gauls or Germans who desired were free to aid him. He offered as inducement the slaves (or prisoners of war) and plunder (or herds and other property) which they might secure. The following narrative relates how this invitation to all the marauders of these wild regions almost brought disaster upon himself.

## 316.

## I.

Trāns flūmen Rhēnum ad Germānōs vēnit rūmor, “Omnes quī bellum gerere **possunt** ad **praedam** Eburōnum ā Caesare ē-vocantur.” **Cōgunt** equitum duo milia Sugambri, quī sunt Germānōrum proximī Rhēnō. Trāns-ivērunt Rhēnum nāvibus trīgintā milibus passuum infrā eum locum ubi paucī legiōnārii ā Caesare **relictī**. Eburōnum multōs quōs exercitus Caesaris fugā sē servāre **cōgēbat** māgnamque **praedam** cēpērunt.

Sed ūnus ex captivīs, “Quid vōs”; dīxit, “hanc miseram **capitis praedam**? Fortūnatissimī esse **poteritis**, nam celeriter contendere ad castra Aduatucam **potestis**, quō in locō omnēs suās fortūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum **coēgit**, ut ibi māgnam **praedam** capere **possitis**. Militēs tam paucī sunt, ut in castris omnēs sē tenēre **cōgantur**, et centuriōnēs suōs dūcere extrā mūrōs nōn audeant.”

Laetissimē Sugambri suam **praedam relinquunt**, captivum esse dūcem **cōgunt**, et ad castra Aduatucam contendunt.

## 317.

## WORD-LIST.

**possum, posse, potuī**, *to be able, can.*

**cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus**, *to collect, to compel.*

**relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus**, *to leave behind.*

**praeda, praedae**, *plunder.*

## 318.

I. He hastens with a small force to the winter camp to defend it.



2. Because of the lack of grain he was unable to keep together the troops which he had collected from all regions for the purpose of carrying on war.

3. They were greatly frightened, so that they left their booty and hurried into the woods.

4. Is your foot or mine the smaller ?

5. We will send the foot-soldiers to the hills, in order that they may not be harassed by the horsemen.

6. Are you able to collect the men who are in the fields ?

7. I was compelled to hasten to your camp because I was unable to defend my own.

8. He sent five hundred soldiers with me,<sup>1</sup> so that I might be able to take the town.

<sup>1</sup> *mēcum.*

## LESSON LII.

### READING LESSON.

#### 319.

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Instructor	Opulent (cp. <b>inopia</b> )	Terrestrial
Impetus	Posse	Unification
Laborious	Perturbation	
Manufactory	Proposal	

#### 320.

#### BACULUS CENTURIŌ.—II.

Cicerō, quī princeps in castris erat, eō tempore quinque cohortēs frūmentī causā in proximōs agrōs miserat, quōs inter et castra ūnus collis erat, ut vērō paucī in castris essent, quōrum multī erant ex legiōnibus ā Caesare aegrī relictī.

Hōc ipsō tempore Sugambrōrum equitēs vērunt, atque subitō ā decumānā portā in castra contendere temptant. Nostri rē novā **perturbantur**, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statīōne sustinēre poterat. Aegrē portās nostri dēfendēbant ; reliqua loca mūrus ipse per sē dēfendit.

Tōta castra **perturbantur**, atque **alius** ex **aliō** causam rēi petēbant. **Alius** dicēbat, “ Iam castra capta sunt ! ” **alius**, “ Caesar **interfectus est** atque barbarī, victōriā laeti, vērunt. ”

Erat aeger in castris relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, ac diem iam quintum cibum edere nōn poterat. Hic sine armis ex tabernāculō ex-ivit ; vidit hostēs quī in portā cum paucis nostrōrum pūgnābant, cēpit arma ā proximis militibus atque ad portam contendit. Cum eō ivērunt **centuriōnēs** eius cohortis quae in statīōne erat.

Parvum tempus proelium sustinere poterant. Reliquit animus Sextium, qui graviter vulneratus est: aegrè ab aliis centuriōnibus servatus est atque intrā portam portatus est. Quoniam hoc spatium temporis virtute Baculi interpositum erat, reliqui tandem in mūrō et ad portam ivērunt ut castra dēfenderent.

Interim cohortēs quinque qui in agrīs fuerant ad castra vērunt. Germāni tandem ex-ivērunt et cum eā praedā quam in silvis reliquerant trāns flūmen Rhēnum sē recēpērunt.

## FĪNIS.

## 321.

## WORD-LIST.

**centuriō, centuriōnis**, m., *centurion*. Each cohort was divided into three "maniples," and each manipule into two "centuries." Each century was commanded by a centurion. The centurions were all men who had been ordinary soldiers (**mīlitēs**) and had been promoted because of bravery or efficiency. Each legion had 60 centuries, and each century contained from 60 to 100 men.

**inter-ficiō, inter-ficere, inter-fēcī, inter-fectus**, *to kill*.

**re-cipiō, re-cipere, re-cēpī, re-ceptus**, *to take back, to receive; sē recipere, to retreat*.

**alius, alia, aliud**, *another* (125).

**perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *to disturb greatly, throw into confusion*.

## 322.

1. With much difficulty (217, line 12) he leads the men through (166, N. 2) the woods to the top of the mountain, in order that they may be able to see the cities, rivers, hills, and roads of all this region.

2. For three years he had been preparing to wage war, so that his cities should not be captured.

3. Caesar led the line of march to the nearest hill,

in order that there he might draw up the line of battle.

4. Because he has fewer soldiers than the Gauls he keeps them in camp, lest they be killed.

5. The leader said to his soldiers: "You are men who have fought well in many battles in Gaul, so that you are easily able to take yonder camp. I myself will lead you."

6. They are in difficulty from want of javelins, so that they are unable either<sup>1</sup> to make an attack or<sup>1</sup> to retreat.

7. Cannot you yourself give me the horse?

8. Some gave him a hundred, some fifty, hostages.

## LESSON LIII.

### FOURTH CONJUGATION. Ī-VERBS.

**Audiō** (stem **audī-**), *hear*.

Principal parts, **audiō**, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītus**.

**323.** Learn all the tenses, active and passive, of **audiō** (485). How do the forms of **audiō** differ from those of **regō** and **capīō**?

**324.** 1. Audit, audiēbat, audiet. 2. Audī, audire. 3. Audiunt, audiuntur. 4. Audītis, audiēbātis, audiētis. 5. Audiēbam, nē audirēs, audite. 6. Audiam, auditur, audiēbāmur. 7. Audiar, audimur, audiri. 8. Ut audirent, audiēbātur. 9. Ut audiās, audiētur.

**325.** Inflect **mūniō**, *fortify*, and **veniō**, *come*, like **audiō**.

**326.** PROELIUM MUNDÆ.<sup>2</sup>

Ad proelium Mundæ, quod postquam Pompēius interfectus erat in Hispāniā gestum est, Caesar cum eius filiis pūgnāvit.

<sup>1</sup> See **aut** in vocabulary.

<sup>2</sup> This anecdote is related by Plutarch, in his Life of Caesar. Its truth has been doubted.

Tam acriter pugnatum est ut de hoc proelio amicis Caesar diceret, "De victoria saepe pugnavi, sed de vita hoc uno tempore."

## 327.

## GALLI ET GERMANI.

Olim Germanos Galli virtute tam superaverunt ut ultro cum eis bella gererent, et propter hominum magnum numerum agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, Volcae Tectosages, qui Galli sunt, occupaverunt. Hi ad hoc tempus<sup>1</sup> his locis sese continent. Nunc a Germanis tam multis proeliis Galli sunt superati ut non se ipsi illis virtute pares existimare possent.

## 328.

1. He hastens from the camp to make an attack.
2. He hastened to the winter camp, in order not to be attacked.
3. He tried to capture the baggage of the whole legion, so that it should not be able to make the march for want of food. He seized the baggage of eight cohorts, so that very many soldiers are in want of food. But our legate will send the cavalry to the fields, that he may thus obtain grain.
4. The Gauls once sent colonies across the river Rhine into Germany, so that they have held the most fertile parts of this country until the present time. Nevertheless (303, N. 2) they are not the equals of the Germans in number, or in other respects,<sup>2</sup> so that the latter now wage war upon them of their own accord.

<sup>1</sup> That is, the time of Caesar.

rēs.



## LESSON LIV.

## REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

**329.** Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctives and the perfect and future infinitives of all the model verbs.

Review the Use of Principal Parts (83).

Review carefully the Personal Endings (76) and Tense Signs (188).

**330.** Each verb has **three** stems; one for the **Present, Imperfect** and **Future** tenses; one for the **Perfect, Pluperfect** and **Future Perfect** tenses, **Active**; and one for the **same tenses** in the **Passive**. This is why the "**Principal Parts**" must be learned.

*a.* Do you see any reason, in the meanings of the tenses, why the stem of the Present, Imperfect and Future is different from that of the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect tenses? (Cp. 275, *a.*)

**331.** Every verb form in the Present, Imperfect and Future tenses contains some or all of these divisions: Stem, Ending, Conjugation (or Connecting) vowel, Tense sign; **nūnti-ā-ba-t**, **hab-ē-bi-mus**, **pet-e-nt**.

**332. Conjugation Vowel:** First Conjugation, **Ā**: **nūnti-At**, **nūntiĀbat**, **nūntiĀbit**, **nūntiĀret**, except in the Present Subjunctive, **nūntiĒt**. Second Conjugation, **E**: **habĒt**, **habĒbat**, **habĒbit**, **habĒret**. Third Conjugation, variable. Fourth Conjugation, **I**, **audiIt**, **audiĪbat**, **audiIt**, **audiĪt**, **audiĪret**.

*a.* Notice that verbs in **iō** of the third conjugation have some forms like the fourth. Which are they?

**333. Tense signs:** Imperfect Indicative, **BA**: **nūntiā-BAt**, **habēBAt**, **petēBAt**, **capiēBAt**, **audiēBAt**.



**Future Indicative:** First and Second Conjugation, **bō**, **bi**, **bu-nt**.

The Third and Fourth Conjugations have the vowel **A** in the First person, and **E** in the other persons: **regAm**, **regĒs**, **audiAm**, **audiĒs**.

**Present Subjunctive:** First Conjugation, vowel **E**: **nūn-tiEm**. Other Conjugations, vowel **A**: **habeAm**, **petAm**, **capiAm**, **audiAm**.

**Imperfect Subjunctive, RĒ:** **nūntiāRĒs**, **habĒRĒs**, **petĒRĒs**, **capeRĒs**, **audīRĒs**.

**334.** Personal Endings: Active, **ō** or **m** (*I*), **s** (*thou*), **t** (*he*), **mus** (*we*), **ris** (*you*), **nt** (*they*).

Passive, **r** (*I*), **ris** (*thou*), **tur** (*he*), **mur** (*we*), **minī** (*you*), **ntur** (*they*).

### 335.

*a.* What unexplained peculiarity is there in the imperfect indicative of the fourth conjugation?

*b.* Notice that the imperative and infinitive do not conform to these rules.

## LESSON LV.

### THE INFINITIVE.

**336.** We are accustomed to think of the **infinitive** as meaning “to make,” “to do,” etc., and nothing else, but the **Latin infinitive** really has **two** meanings in **English**. The words **eum mittere**, for instance, in one construction mean “to send him,” and in another, “that he is sending.”

### 337. The infinitive has two main uses:

I. It completes the meaning of a verb, as in English.

**Vult venīre**, *He wishes to come.*

**Mē interficere temptat**, *He is trying to kill me.*

a. It has been very frequently used thus in the preceding lessons. This construction is easily understood (155).

The perfect and future infinitive are rarely used in this construction.

b. CAUTION.—The infinitive by a similar usage in English expresses purpose.

**Venit ut mē videat,** *He comes to see me.*

The idea of **purpose** is expressed in **Latin** by the **subjunctive** with **ut** or **nē** (279).

## II. USE OF INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

### EXAMPLES.

**Tū oppūgnās,** *You are attacking.*

**Urbs oppūgnāta est,** *The city has been attacked.*

**Tū oppūgnābis,** *You will attack.*

**Dīcit tē oppūgnāre,** *He says that you are attacking.*

**Exīstimāmus urbem oppūgnātam esse,** *We suppose that the city has been attacked.*

**Cōgnōscō tē oppūgnātūrum esse,** *I know that you will attack.*

a. Compare the sentences in these two columns. The sentences in the second column are **indirect statements**. What is an indirect statement?

b. Now compare each sentence in the second column with its translation. Notice that **tē oppūgnāre** is translated “*that you are attacking*”; **urbem oppūgnātam esse**, “*that the city has been attacked*”; **tē oppūgnātūrum esse**, “*that you will attack*.”

c. Notice that there is **no word** in the **Latin** to correspond to the English word “*that*.” The English word **that**, when used to introduce an indirect statement, **cannot be translated** into Latin.

It is very important that the pupil remember this fact.

**338.** Thus, after a verb denoting **mental action** (“say,” “think,” “notice,” “learn,” etc.) the English usually uses the particle “that,” followed by a finite verb; for instance, “He knows that you are the person.”

The verb or verbs **introduced by** the English “that” are in Latin put in the **infinitive**.

These infinitives are called **infinitives in Indirect Statements**.

**339.** In the model sentences in 337 notice that not only are the verbs of the **direct statement** changed to **infinitives** in the **indirect statement**, but that the **nominatives** *tū* and *urbs* are changed to **accusatives**, *tē* and *urbem*, although in the English translation each still remains the subject of the same verb as in the Direct Statement.

These **accusatives** are said to be the **subjects** of the **infinitives** which follow them.

**340. RULE.**—The subject of the infinitive is in the **accusative**.

**341. RULE.**—Statements after verbs and other expressions of **saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving** are called **Indirect Statements**, and are expressed by the **infinitive with subject accusative**.

**342.**

1. Dicit sē tribūnum futūrum esse.
2. Dicit fugere Rōmānōs.
3. Eī nūntiant eōs arma capere.
4. Ē castris equitātum ē-dūci cōgnōscunt.
5. Existimat Cāium Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duā-bus in castris relictum esse.
6. Cōgnōscit eōrum fugā reliquum equitātum esse perterritum.

7. Ad Aeduōs principēs duōs, quōs illi interfectōs esse existimant, cum equitibus mittit.

8. Caesar cōgnōscit summīs cōpiīs castra oppugnāta esse; et multōs tēlis vulnerātōs esse. Summō studiō militum brevī tempore ad castra per-vēnit.

9. Ubiī, qui obsidēs dedērunt, dicunt nūlla auxilia ex suā civitatē in Trēverōs missa esse. Trēverī trāns flūmen Rhēnum lēgātōs mittunt. Lēgātī Germānis dicunt māgnam partem exercitūs nostrī interfectam esse, atque multō minōrem super-esse partem. Sed Germāni eis dicunt sē nōn bellō amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs esse.

10. Dicunt sē per hanc terram iter factūrōs esse. Lēgātus dicit sē eōs prohibitūrum esse. Illi dicunt sē aliud iter habēre nūllum.

11. Dīcis māgnū numerum militum ad tē celeriter ā tribūnō ad-dūcī.

12. Dicunt omnēs equitēs Aeduōrum interfectōs esse, et ipsōs fūgissee.

**343.** Turn the indirect statements in the first six sentences of 342 back into direct statements. If the perfect infinitive is used in the indirect statement, a tense denoting past time should be used in the direct statement; if a present infinitive, a tense denoting present time; if a future infinitive, a tense denoting future time.

## LESSON LVI.

## 344. THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

Dīcit	{	tē oppūgnā- visse,	{	He says He will say He said	{	that you attacked (have attacked).
Dīcet						
Dīxit						

Dīcit	{	urbem oppūgnā- tam esse,	{	He says He will say He said	{	that the city was (has been) at- tacked.
Dīcet						
Dīxit						

Dīcit	{	tē oppūgnāre,	{	He says He will say He said	{	that you are attack- ing. that you were attacking.
Dīcet						
Dīxit						

Dīcit	{	urbem oppū- gnārī,	{	He says He will say He said	{	that the city is being attacked. that the city was being attacked.
Dīcet						
Dīxit						

Dīcit	{	tē oppūgnātū- rum esse,	{	He says He will say He said	{	that you will attack. that you would attack.
Dīcet						
Dīxit						

Dīcit	{	urbem oppūgnā- tum irī, <sup>1</sup>	{	He says He will say He said	{	that the city will be attacked. that the city would be attacked.
Dīcet						
Dīxit						

a. Notice the change in the English translation from *is* to *was* under the **present** infinitive, and *will* to *would* under the **future** infinitive.

b. Notice that these changes occur because the **English** takes the **point of view**, as to time, of the man who **quotes** the original speaker ; that is, the point of view of **the one** who **speaks** or **writes** the **completed** sentence.

<sup>1</sup> More commonly **fore ut urbs oppūgnētur** (oppūgnārētur, after **Dīxit**). **Fore** is equivalent to **futūrum esse** (486).



A little reflection will show that this is always the point of view of the present, or **present** time.

c. The **Latin**, unlike the English, **retains** the **point of view**, as to time, of the **person whose words are quoted**, that is, the point of view of the person denoted in the English sentences above by "He."

**345.** The **time** denoted by the **infinitive**, then, is the **same** as the time which was denoted by the **verb** of the **direct statement** whose place the infinitive has taken.

a. The direct statement, for instance, "**Vēnerat**," "*He had gone*," **always** takes a perfect infinitive when it is turned into an indirect statement; "**Veniō**," "*I am going*," a present infinitive; "**Veniēs**," "*You will go*," a future infinitive.

**346. RULE.**—The **tenses** of the **infinitive** in indirect statements denote past, present, or future, **relatively** to the **time** denoted by the **verb of saying**.

a. The tenses of **English** verbs in indirect statements are past, present, or future, relatively to present time.

### 347.

1. Eō tempore mūrum dēfendēbat.
2. Dixit sē mūrum dēfendisse.
3. Eō tempore dixit sē mūrum dēfendere.
4. Dicit eum eō tempore mūrum dēfendisse.
5. Caesar dixit sē saepe proelium commisisse.
6. Caesar dicit sē saepe proelium committūrum esse.
7. Caesar dixit sē proelium committere.
8. Caesar dicit eum proelium committūrum esse.
9. Nūntiātum est iter **facile** eum factūrum esse.
10. Caesarem **certiōrem facient** sēsē nōn **facile** ab oppidīs hostēs prohibēre posse.
11. Haedui ad Caesarem lēgātum mittunt ut eum **certiōrem faciant** paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrōs Helvétīōs occupāvisse.



12. Cōnsidius dicit montem ab hostibus tenērī ; id sē ā Gallōrum armīs cōgnōvisse. Sed multō diē Caesar cōgnōscit montem ā suis tenērī.

13. Allobrogēs fugā sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt et eum certiōrem fēcērunt sibi prāter agrōs nihil relictum esse.

14. Eōdem diē certior factus est hostēs sub monte impedimenta posuisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octō.

## 348.

## WORD-LIST.

cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, *to learn about, to recognize, to examine.*

certus, -a, -um, *certain, trustworthy* ; certiōrem facere, *to inform.* facilis, facile, *easy* (167).

## 349.

1. He learned that the enemy had made an attack.

2. He learns that his own men are holding the mountain.

3. He learned that his own men had held the mountain for two days.

4. He learns that the enemy will make an attack.

5. He learned that the enemy was making an attack.

6. He learned that an attack had been made by the cavalry.

7. He will learn that the enemy is fighting with great bravery

8. He learns that the soldiers are tired.

## LESSON LVII.

## 350. THE APPEAL OF THE GAULS TO CAESAR.

Postquam Caesar bellum cum Helvētiis gessit, concilium tōtius Galliae diē certō habitum est. Ex eō conciliō principēs ad Caesarem veniunt atque ita ei nūntiant :

Galliae tōtius factionēs esse duās ; hārum alterius principātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hōs inter sē mul-

tòs annòs contendisse, atque ab Arvernīs et Sēquanīs Germānòs trāns Rhēnum flūmen ductòs esse. Cum his Haeduòs armīs contendisse; omnēs principēs et omnem equitātum in proeliis interfectòs esse. Coāctòs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, et iūrāre sēsē neque obsidēs ā Sēquanīs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō petitūròs esse. Sed pēius Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs accidisse. Ariovistum, rēgem Germānōrum, in ēorum terram suum exercitum dūxisse, tertiamque partem agrī occupāvisse, atque nunc alteram partem tertiam capere temptāre. Hominem esse barbarum; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinēri.

Caesarem ūnum Galliam omnem ab Ariovistō posse dēfendere.

### 351.

1. Caesar learned that the Arverni had brought Ariovistus with a large army into Gaul; that the Gauls had been compelled to give hostages to Ariovistus; that he was about to seize a very large part of Gaul and give it to the Germans; and that Caesar alone was able to defend the Gauls from him.

2. Change 350 from *coāctòs esse* to the end into a direct statement.

## LESSON LVIII.

### 352.

#### EXAMPLES.

Timeō ut properet, } *I fear that he is not*

Timeō nē nōn properet, } *hastening.*

Subjunctive after  
Verbs of Fearing.

Timeō nē properet, *I fear that he is hastening,*  
or, *I fear lest he be hastening.*

a. Notice that **verbs of fearing** are followed by **ut** or **nē** with the **subjunctive**.

b. Notice that **nē**, in this construction, can always be translated by "*lest*."

c. Notice that **nē** can also be translated by “*that*,” and that **ut** means “*that not*.” **Ut** and **nē** thus **seem** to exchange the meanings which they usually have.

**353. RULE.**—The **subjunctive** with **ut** or **nē** is used after **verbs of fearing**; **ut** meaning “*that not*,” and **nē** “*that*” or “*lest*.”

**354.**

1. Trēs annōs frūmentum parābant, ut in itinere cōpiam habērent.

2. **Timēmus** ut bonum cōnsilium capiās.

3. **Timēmus** nē mālum cōnsilium capiās.

4. Mōns erat altissimus, ut facile paucī eōs prohibēre possent.

5. **Timēbat** ut **venīrem**. **Timēbat** nē aeger essem.

6. Ut auxilium dare posset, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē posuit.

7. Alius aliī in pūgnā auxilium dabat.

8. Ita celeriter **vēnērunt** ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et ad nostram aciem hostēs vidērentur.

9. Lēgātī **timuērunt** nē aqua tōtī exercituī dari nōn posset.

10. Dicit Nammēium principem locum obtinuisse et nūntiāvisse sē per illam terram iter factūrum esse.

11. **Timēmus** nē noster exercitus celeriter nōn **veniat** et urbs ā principibus hostium capiātur.

12. Caesar certior factus erat eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

13. Ita diēs quīndecim iter fēcērunt, ut spatium inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quinque aut sex milibus passuum esset.

14. Partem suārum cōpiārum trāns flūmen dūcere temptāvērunt, eō cōnsiliō, nē hiberna oppūgnārentur.

15. In conciliō optimum esse vidētur ad suam terram quemque **venīre**, nē in aliōrum terris sed in suis pūgnent.

16. Quā rē erit ut tōtīus terrae cōpiae ab eō premeantur.

17. In collibus legiōnāriōs ponet, ut dē cōsiliīs principum cōgnōscere possit.

18. Ut omnēs ūnō tempore in hostēs impetum facerent, ā proeliō suōs tenēbat.

19. **Timent** ut hostēs impetum faciant.

20. **Timuērunt** nē hostēs impetum facerent.

21. Legiōnāriōs ex urbe dūxit ut hostis impetum faceret.

22. Legiōnāriōs ad superiōrem locum dūcit nē hostēs impetum faciant.

23. Legiōnāriōs ad locum superiōrem dūxit, ut hostēs impetum nōn facerent.

24. Hiberna nōn amplius quīnque milibus passuum ā flūmine ab-sunt.

### 355.

### WORD-LIST.

**veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, to come.**

**timeō, timēre, timuī, —, to be afraid, to fear.**

### 356.

1. He came to see you, but was afraid that you would not be able to see him.

2. He is afraid that you will not be able to see him, so that he will not come to see you.

3. They said that the enemy tried last night to seize the gate of the town, and wounded five men.

4. They say that the fleet will attack his ships, but that his soldiers will easily defend themselves.

5. He learns that the Germans will attack him, and is about to abandon this region, so that they will not be able to do <sup>1</sup> this.

6. He is leaving this region, in order that the Germans may not be able to attack him.

7. He took possession of this hill and of yonder mountain, so that he should be able to make an attack upon the enemy from three directions at the same time.

8. He said that he was afraid that you would leave the baggage.

<sup>1</sup> faciō.

## LESSON LIX.

## PARTICIPLES.

**357.** Learn the participles of the model verbs (480-486).

*a.* Observe that there is **no present passive** or **perfect active** participle.

That is, taking the verb "to send" as an example, there are **no forms** in Latin corresponding to "**having sent**" or "**being sent.**"

*b.* What participles are used as parts of the compound tenses in the model verbs?

**358.** Participles are **declined** like **adjectives**, and, like them, **agree** with nouns or pronouns in **gender, number, and case.**

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

**Amāns, loving.**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
NOM.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
GEN.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
DAT.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
ACC.	amantem	amāns	amantēs, -īs	amantia
ABL.	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amantibus	amantibus
VOC.	(amāns	amāns)	(amantēs	amantia)

The declension is similar to that of **sapiēns** (166).

**Perfect** (**amātus**) and **Future** (**amātūrus**) Participles are declined like **bonus** (474).

**359. EXAMPLES.**

**Ad Gallōs oppūgnantēs oppidum vēnit, He came to the Gauls (while they were) attacking a town.**

**Prīnceps captus ad Italiam mittētur, The chief, if he is**



*captured (or, when captured, literally, having been taken), will be sent to Italy.*

**Prīncipem captum ad Ītaliā mīsīt,** *He sent the chief, when he had been captured (having been captured), to Italy.*

**Gallī graviter perturbātī fortiter pūgnāvērunt,** *The Gauls, (although) greatly disturbed (having been greatly disturbed), fought bravely.*

**Lēgātus, perturbātus, ad suōs properāvit,** *The legate, (because he was) disturbed (having been disturbed), hastened to his own men.*

**Nāvem relīctam cēpit,** *He took the ship which had been left behind.*

**Oppidum oppūgnātum est,** *The town has been (or was) attacked.*

a. The **present** (active) participle represents the action as **going on** at the time denoted by the main verb.

Use of  
Participle.

b. Notice the various ways in which the **perfect** (passive) participle can be translated. It represents the action as **completed** at the time denoted by the main verb. This explains the somewhat puzzling fact illustrated by the last sentence, that **est**, when combined with the perfect participle of a regular verb to form the perfect passive tense, **seems** to change its meaning to "*was.*" **Oppidum oppūgnātum est**, if translated literally, means "*The town is (in a state of) having (formerly) been attacked.*"

Does this also explain why **erat**, when found in the perfect passive of a regular verb, is translated "*had been*" instead of "*was,*" and why **erit**, when found in the future perfect passive, is translated "*shall have been*" instead of "*shall be*"?



**360. RULE.**—With **names of towns** the place to which is expressed by the **accusative without a preposition**.

Accusative of  
Place Whither,  
Names of Towns.

*Ad urbem Rōmam vēnī, I came to the city Rome.*

*Rōmam vēnī, I came to Rome.*

*Ad Galliam vēnī, I came to Gaul.*

*a.* In the first sentence **ad** governs **urbem**, with which **Rōmam** is in apposition.

In the second **Rōmam** is used alone, and so is without a preposition.

*b.* Notice that the rule does not apply to the names of countries.

*c.* **Domus** (420, 472) also conforms to this rule.

### **361.** CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.

Caesar's operations against the Senate and Pompey before the battle of Pharsalia (245) included the sending of an army under Caius Curio to invade the Roman province of Africa, in order to conquer Varus, a general who was friendly to the Senate. Varus secured the help of king Juba, who ruled over the tribes living in the mountains south and west of the province.

### **362.**

#### **I.**

His temporibus Cāius Curiō in Āfricam,<sup>1</sup> ā Caesare missus, ex Siciliā duās legiōnēs ex quattuor quās ei dederat Caesar et quīngentōs equitēs trāns-portāvit et ad locum Anquillāriam vēnit. Hūius adventum Lūcius Caesar filius cum decem longis nāvibus ad Clupeam exspectāns, timēns nāvium multitudinem ex altō ad proximum litus **fūgerat** et pedibus Hadrumentum properāverat. Id oppidum Cōnsidius Longus ūna legiōne tenēbat. Reliquae nāvēs Lūci Caesaris, **fugientēs** ex altō, sē Hadrumentum recēpērunt. Lūcium Cae-

<sup>1</sup> See Maps IV and V for the places mentioned in 362 and 365.

sarem **fugientem** capere temptāns Rūfus nāvibus duodecim quās ex Siciliā Curiō ē-dūxerat ut classem ā Vārō missam ab onerāriīs nāvibus prohiberet, postquam in litore relictam ā Lūciō nāvem vidit, hanc cēpit; atque ad Curiōnem cum suā classe et nāve captā vēnit.

Curiō Rūfum Uticam cum nāvibus prae-misit; ipse exercitum ad flūmen Bagradam dūxit. Ibi Rebilum lēgātum cum legiōnibus reliquit; ipse cum equitātū properāvit ad Castra Cornēlia, quoniam is locus idōneus habēbātur. Is est mōns ad litus, et ab-est ab Uticā paulō amplius passūs mille.

**363.**

## WORD-LIST.

**fugiō, fugere; fūgī, fugitus,** *to run away, to flee.*

**364.** (Use participles wherever you can.)

## I.—THE DEATH OF DUMNORIX.

Dumnorix, fearing that Caesar was going to kill him, fled from the Roman camp with the horsemen of the Haedui. Horsemen were sent by Caesar, so that he might be captured while he was fleeing. They killed him while he was trying to defend himself, and repeating (saying often<sup>1</sup>) that he was free himself and the chief of a free state. His horsemen, terrified, came back again<sup>2</sup> to Caesar.

2. Lucius Caesar, fearing lest he should be captured by the fleet which had been sent from Italy, left his ship upon the nearest shore and came on foot to Hadrumentum. The fleet of Rufus, who was trying to capture the ships of Lucius Caesar, came to the ship which the latter had abandoned. Rufus came with the captured ship to Curio, who sent him to Utica.

<sup>1</sup> saepe.<sup>2</sup> iterum.

## LESSON LX.

## READING LESSON.

265.

CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.—II.

Ex hōc monte Curiō castra Vārī vidit. Eōdem tempore vidit multa ex omnibus partibus per viās ā populō portārī, quae bellum timentēs ex agrīs in urbem portābant. Ad hās viās equitātum misit, ut haec caperet, eōdemque tempore sexcenti equitēs ex oppidō peditēsque quadringenti, ā Vārō missi, ex-ivērunt. Equitēs pūgnāvērunt, neque vērō primum impetum nostrōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed interfecti sunt circiter centum et vīginti. Reliqui sē in castra ad oppidum recēpērunt.

Interim adventū longārum nāvium Curiō magistrīs onerārī-  
ārum nāvium nūntiāvit, quae ad Uticam numerō circiter  
ducentae stābant, “Eum hostium habēbō locō, quī nōn ad  
Castra Cornēlia suās nāvēs trādūxisset.” Omnēs nāvēs ex  
Uticā ex-ivērunt et ad Castra Cornēlia vērunt. Quā rē  
omnium rērū cōpiam obtinēre exercitus potuit.

Tum Curiō sē in castra ad Bagradam flūmen recēpit, poste-  
rōque diē exercitum Uticam dūxit et prope oppidum castra  
ponēbat. Ei castrōrum vallum facienti equitēs nūntiant  
māgna auxilia equitum peditumque ā rēge Iubā missa Uticam  
venire, eōdem tempore māgna pulvis vidētur, et brevissimō  
tempore primum agmen est in cōspectū. Novam rem timēns  
Curiō equitēs prae-mittit ut ita primum impetum sustineat;  
ipse celeriter ab opere legiōnāriōs dūcit aciemque instruit.  
Equitēs proelium committunt et, quoniam nūllum timentēs  
principēs hostis iter faciēbant, tōta auxilia rēgis perturbāta  
ac perterrita fugere cōgunt, māgnumque peditum numerum  
interficiunt. Equitātus fugā servātur, atque sē per litus cele-  
riter in oppidum recipit.

**366.**

1. The Gauls say that they will make use of the plan of this messenger. They will make an attack upon the Romans while they are making a march through the forest. They will first attack the auxiliary troops, whom they will easily be able to throw into confusion, so that these by their terror<sup>1</sup> may disturb the legionary troops.

2. The chiefs, sent by king Juba, while they were marching to Utica with many hundred horsemen and footmen, came in sight of the Romans, who were building the rampart of their camp. When attacked by the Roman cavalry the horsemen fled along the shore to Utica.

## LESSON LXI.

**367.**

## DEPONENT VERBS.

**Deponent verbs** are **passive** in **form**, but **active** in **meaning**.

*Ūtor*, *I use* (not, I am used).

*Sequitur*, *he follows* (not, he is followed).

There are deponent verbs belonging to each of the conjugations, but the more common ones are nearly all of the third conjugation.

**368.** Their conjugation differs from that of the passive of other verbs in two ways :

1. The **future infinitive** of deponent verbs is **active in form** : *cōnātūrus esse* (not *cōnātum iri*).

2. Deponent verbs have the **participles** of **both voices** :

*cōnāns*, *trying*.

*cōnātūrus*, *about to try*.

*cōnātus*, *having tried*.

*cōnandus*, (gerundive).

a. Does 357, a, apply to deponent verbs?

<sup>1</sup> Use a participle.

**369.** There are **five** deponent verbs which, with their compounds, take **no** direct object in the **accusative case**. They **govern** the **ablative case** instead ; thus,

**Ūteris** meō gladiō, *You are using my sword.*

**Tuā patientiā ab-ūtor**, *I am abusing your patience.*

**Quis labōre nōn fruitur** ? *Who does not enjoy labor ?*

**370. RULE.**—**Ūtor**, **frutor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vescor**, and their compounds, govern the **ablative**.

### 371.

1. **Ut** facilius eō cōnsiliō **ūtātur**, impedimenta in locō idōneō relinquit.

2. Facile est tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.

3. **Ēius** cōnsiliō **ūsī**, **proficīscī** temptāvērunt.

4. Tuō gladiō in impetū **ūsus** est.

5. Gladiis legiōnāriī nōn **ūtentur**, nē obsidēs vulnerentur.

6. Quis bonā fortūnā nōn fruitur ?

7. In Ītaliā celeriter **profectus** est.

8. Militem praedā fruī dicit.

9. Militēs, urbe potitī, etiam mulierēs et liberōs interfēcērunt.

10. Impedimentis hostium potitī sumus, quī nostrum impetum nōn **sus-tinēre** potuērunt.

11. Laetissimī erant militēs, quoniam urbe cum omnī praedā potiti erant.

12. Bellō dēfessus, in Ītaliā cum unā cohorte **proficīscī** contendit.

13. Caesar **proficīscēbātur** ut agmen hostis ā monte prohibērētur.

14. **Ūtī** equitātū temptābat, sed labōre equī dēfessī erant.

15. Quī **erant** hostium longius **profectī**, hōs levis armātūrae interfēcērunt.

16. Tandem cōnātus est Caesar opera per-ficere, ut impetum **sus-tinēret**.

17. Suō quisque cōnsiliō **ūtēbātur**.



18. Nūntium misit, quem pāuca locūtus loquī plūra Galba prohibuit.

19. Eā quae secūta est hieme Usipetēs Germānī māgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trāns-ivērunt, quoniam ā Suēbīs complūrēs annōs premēbantur.

20. Eōdem diē ex urbe **proficīscitur** māgnisque itineribus in Senonēs per-vēnit.

## 372.

## WORD-LIST.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, *to use.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus, *to set out, to go.*

sus-tineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *to hold out against.*

## 373.

1. It was told to the lieutenant, as he was setting out with three cohorts, that the Gauls would assault him suddenly among the hills. Fearing that foot-soldiers would not be able to hold out against their attack, he gave horses to the soldiers of the cohorts, using the horses of the auxiliary troops.

2. When he had set out from the camp he marched quickly, using the captured horses.

3. Harassed during seven years by their enemies, they at length gained possession of a few ships, in order to come to their friends. But when their enemies learned that they were trying to make use of the ships which they had secured, they made an attack by night and captured them.

## LESSON LXII.

## 374.

## EXAMPLES.

Centuriōnī militēs pārent, *Soldiers obey the centurion.*

Sibi nocent, *They are injuring themselves.*

Mihi persuāsit ut eī crēderem, *He per-* Dative with Some  
Intransitives.  
*suaed me to believe him.*



A large number of verbs which are **transitive in English** (that is, admit of a direct object) are **in Latin intransitive** (that is, admit only of an indirect object). Hence they are said to govern the dative (23).

**375. RULE.**—Most verbs meaning to **favor, please, believe, trust, help**, and their **opposites**; also, to **persuade, command, obey, serve, resist**, and the like, are followed by the **dative**.

**376.**

1. Nōbīs amīcōrum bonīs ūtī **persuādet**.
2. Et sibi et **cīvitātī** nocēbit, sī ab urbe proficiscētur.
3. Tē cum studiō sequēmur.
4. Istī nūntiō crēdere nōn possum.
5. Tibi in mūrū venīre **persuādēbimus**, ut montēs videās.
6. **Cīvitātī** **persuāsīt** ut ā terrā suā Caesarem omnibus cum cōpiīs prohibērent. Id hōc facilius eis **persuāsīt**, quoniam locī nātūrā continentur.
7. In eō itinere **persuādet** Casticō ut imperium in **cīvitāte** suā occupet, quod pater ante habuit, Dumnorigīque Haeduō, fratrī Divitiācī, quī hōc tempore imperium in **cīvitāte** obtinuit, ut idem temptet **persuādet**.
8. **Persuādent** his **cīvitātibus** ut, eōdem ūsī cōsiliō, cum iis proficiscantur.
9. Dicit sē his **persuādēre** nōn potuisse.

**377.**

WORD-LIST.

**persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus, to persuade.**  
**cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., a state or nation.**

**378.**

1. Because the land of the Helvetians is hemmed in on all sides by very high mountains, Orgetorix easily persuaded the chiefs of this state that their land was too small, and that they, making use of their numerous soldiery, would be able to seize quickly the finest fields of Gaul.

2. The legate sent two men to the chief, who told him, "The Romans ask you to come<sup>1</sup> to them in order that they may make use of your skill in war." He believed them, so that they were easily able to persuade him to set out,<sup>1</sup> having only<sup>2</sup> three hundred of his own men with him. The Romans attacked him in a suitable place, as he was making the journey, and killed him.

## LESSON LXIII.

### THE IRREGULAR VERBS VOLO, NŌLO, MĀLO.

Principal Parts : { **volō, velle, voluī.**  
                               { **nōlō, nolle, noluī** [nē-volō].  
                               { **mālō, malle, māluī** [magis-volō].

**379.** Learn the conjugation of **volō**, **nōlō** and **mālō** (487).

### **380.**

1. **Vult** venire. Dixit sē **velle** venire.
2. **Nōluit sequī.** Dicunt sē **nolle** sequī.
3. **Vīs** proficisci. Cōgnōscimus tē **velle** sequī.
4. Aliōrum bonis frui mālumus quam nostris ūti.
5. **Nōluistī** audire.
6. Accidit ut ad illam civitātem venire **vellet**.
7. Dicitur eum hōc dōnum illō māluisse.
8. **Volentēs** aut **nōlentēs** impetum facient.
9. Dicunt sē **voluisse** Caesarem sequī.
10. Māvult re-dūci.
11. Nōn **vultis** aciem instrui.
12. **Nōlī** perterreri.
13. Agmen exercitūs **sequēminī.**
14. **Nōlite** persuādēri.
15. Agmen Gallōrum cum equitātū **sequēbātur.**
16. **Vultisne** mē eōdem tempore venire?
17. Mālumus tē ā-futūram esse.

<sup>1</sup> Not infinitive.

<sup>2</sup> tantum.

18. **Volam** ad-esse, sed ille superiøre tempore **nōluit** quemquam praeter vōs vestrumque patrem ad-esse. Timeō nē m venīre **nōlet**.

**Nōlumus** illum vidēre nisi tē ad-esse **voluerit**.

## 381.

## WORD LIST.

**volō, velle, voluī**, *to be willing, to wish.*

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, *to be unwilling.*

**sequor, sequī, secūtus** (deponent), *to follow.*

## 382.

1. He was informed that this lieutenant would follow another, but was unwilling to lead the line of march himself.

2. He wished to set out for Italy, but could not (do so).

3. He prefers to attack the winter camp by night, but his soldiers have said that they are unwilling to follow him.

4. We were unwilling to follow a leader who kept us from seizing the grain in the fields.

5. Do you not wish us to use the things which you gave us?

6. I can use two swords at the same time, but he is unable to use even <sup>1</sup> one.

## LESSON LXIV.

## 383.

## EXAMPLES.

**Cum mīlitēs in castra vērunt, lēgātus eōs hortātus est**, *When the soldiers came into camp, the legate encouraged them.*

**Cum bellum perfectum erit, Rōmam veniam**, *When the war is (shall have been) finished, I will go to Rome.*

<sup>1</sup> etiam.

**Cum militēs in castra venīrent, Gallī eōs oppūgnāvērunt,**  
*While the soldiers were coming into the camp the Gauls attacked them.*

**Cum oppidum captum esset, Massiliam**  
**contendit,** *When the town had been captured he* <sup>Cum, when</sup>  
*hastened to Massilia.* (or Temporal).

a. Notice the moods and tenses of the verbs in the **cum** clauses.

**384. RULE.—Cum,** meaning, *when*, is followed by the **subjunctive**, if the tense is the **imperfect** or **pluperfect**; **otherwise**, by the **indicative**.

**385.**

1. Cum barbarī proelium committere peterent, princeps ūnum ex hostibus tēlō vulnerāvit.

2. Militēs cum oppidum cēpērunt, omnēs hominēs interfēcērunt.

3. Militēs cum oppidum cēpissent, omnēs hominēs interfēcērunt.

4. Cum ad eum centuriōnem dūcerem, multa dixit.

5. Lēgātus nūntiō duce ūsus exercitum per silvās dūxit.

6. Equitēs, cum lēgātus aciem instrueret, eī hostem prope esse nūntiāvērunt.

7. Lēgātō instruētī aciem equitēs id nūntiāvērunt.

8. Lēgātus, cum aciem instrūxisset, complūrēs equitēs prae-misit.

9. Cum Caesar per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret, circiter mīlia passuum decem ā Rōmānīs trīnīs in castris Vercingetorix suās cōpiās constituit, et equitum ducibus nūntiat vēnisse tempus victōriae.

10. Signum dat et ā dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū cōdem tempore Aeduōs mittit.

11. Cum in Ītaliā proficīscerētur Caesar, Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs aliōsque civitātēs misit, quae ā fīnibus Allobrogum ad summās Alpēs pertinent.

12. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum duodecim ab-esset, ad eum lēgātī vērunt.

13. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent atque ūnā ex parte castrōrum equitēs ē-missī eis superiōrēs fuissent, hostēs suōs redūxērunt.

### 386.

1. He gave me this gift when he set out from Rome.

2. When an opportunity for assaulting the city is given, he will make the attack with the greatest eagerness.

3. When he saw that he would not be able to take the town, he placed a camp in a suitable position.

4. When he came to see me he gave me this sword.

5. When he came to me he persuaded me to give (378, N. 1) him a greater number of troops than you had yourself.

6. They all set out when there was much grain in the fields.

7. When they had collected a large number of men they hastened to Aduatuca.

8. When he saw you he said that it was you who had tried to wound his foot with your javelin in the battle.

## LESSON LXV.

### 387. REVIEW SENTENCES.

1. Dicit sēsē ad eum venīre nōluisse.

2. Militēs equitēsque dūxit ut eōs quī fūgerant per-seque-rētur.

3. Aristium, tribūnum militum, iter ad legiōnem facientem ex oppidō Gallī ē-dūcunt.

4. Libō, profectus ab Oricō cum classe cui prae-erat, nāvium quīnquāgintā, Brundisium vēnit.

5. Petit ut ipse cum Pompēiō conloquerētur.



6. Libō ad Pompēium proficiscitur.
7. Saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat.
8. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus, ipse cum primum per annī tempus potuit ad exercitum contendit.
9. Dixit Rōmānōs nūllam facultātem habēre nāvium.
10. Hostēs proeliō superātī cum sē ex fugā recēpērunt ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt. Cum hīs lēgātis Com-mius vēnit, quem dixeram ā Caesare in Brittaniam prae-missum esse.
11. Equitēs nostrī cum hostium equitātū proelium com-misērunt. Cum sē illi in silvam ad suōs reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius sequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex ad collem vērērunt ubi castra ponere Caesar constituerat. Cum prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab iis, quī in silvā erant, vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs ad nostra castra in eōs quī in opere occupātī sunt contendērunt.

### 388.

The Gauls captured the tribune while he, having set out with the two cohorts which he was leading, was marching to attack (378, N. 1) three hundred of the enemy who had fled into the forests. They led him and his soldiers, after he had been captured, to the gate<sup>1</sup> of the camp from which he had set out, and there killed them, in order that the Romans who had been left in the camp might be terrified.

The Romans who were in the camp, when they saw that the Gauls had killed the tribune and all of the soldiers whom they had captured, fearing lest they themselves would be overcome, on the following night hastened through (166, N. 2) the forest to the winter camp of the legate. The Gauls upon the next day carried all that the soldiers had left in the camp (away) from it to their own homes (420, 472).

<sup>1</sup> porta.



## LESSON LXVI.

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

389.

EXAMPLES.

Suī dēfendendī causā id fēcīt, *He did this for the sake of defending himself.*

Operam dat oppidīs expūgnandīs, *He* Gerundive.  
*devotes himself to taking towns by storm (to towns to be taken by storm).*

Vēnit ad bellum gerendum, *He came to wage war (for war to be waged).*

Multa dē mūniendīs castrīs dīxit, *He said many things about fortifying camps (about camps to be fortified).*

*a.* The **Gerundive** is a **verbal adjective**. It is called an **adjective** because it **agrees** with its noun in **gender, number** and **case**, as in the sentences above. It is a **verbal adjective** because it expresses **action**.

390. Causā urbem videndī venient, *They will come for the sake of seeing the city.*

Mulī ūtilēs sunt impedīmenta portandō, Gerund.  
*Mules are useful for carrying baggage.*

Victōria oppidum expūgnandō eī erat, *Victory was his by storming the town.*

*a.* The **Gerund** is a **verbal noun**, of the **masculine** gender, and used only in the **singular**. It takes a direct object. It is the same in meaning as the gerundive.

*b.* The Nominative case is wanting in the gerund.

The **infinitive** is used instead, thus :

Cēdere est turpe, *To yield is disgraceful.*

## 391.

## EXAMPLES.

Facultātēs habent { oppidī capiendī,  
oppidum capiendī, } *They have re-  
sources for (of) taking the town.*

a. In the two ways of expressing this sentence, which uses the gerundive?

**392.** Dīcit omnēs Galliae cōpiās ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse, *He says that all the troops of Gaul came to attack him (to him [a man who was] to be attacked).* Purpose Clauses.

See also 389, third sentence.

a. Notice that **ad** with the **gerundive** or **gerund** is used to express **purpose**. In what other ways may purpose be expressed?

## 393.

1. Cōsilium urbem capiendī nūntiāvit.
2. Cōsilium urbis capiendae nūntiāvit.
3. Veniunt ad urbem videndam.
4. Neque cōsili habendī neque arma capiendī facultās datur.
5. Complūra dicendō eis persuādet.
6. Ad urbem capiendam labōrem dat.
7. Labōrandi causā ad vallum properāvit.
8. Caesar ad urbem proficiscitur atque in ulteriōrem Galliam pervēnit, ubi cōgnōscit missum esse in Hispāniam ā Pompēiō Rūfum, quem paucis ante diēbus captum ipse dimiserat.
9. Dixit profectum esse Domitium ad occupandam Massiliam nāvibus septem.
10. In praedā capiendā hostibus nocet.
11. Dīcit Carnūtēs interficiendī eōrum prīncipis cōsilium capturōs esse.
12. Studiō eōrum futūram esse aliquam pūgnandī facultātem existimāvit.

13. Aliquem principum quos secum ad consilium capiendum habebat misit.

14. Galli ad nos interficiendos contendunt.

15. Tribunus suis rem de mittendis legatis nuntiat.

16. Primo milites videndi causa laeti ex castris exiverunt.

17. Ipsi perficiendi operis causa longius proficiscuntur.

18. Legatos monet ut contineant milites ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius proficiscantur.

19. Signum recipiendi dedit.

20. Ad salutem obtinendam pugnabunt.

**394.** (Translate where possible in two ways.)

1. He has very great resources (396) for waging war.

2. He wishes you to give him the opportunity to see the city.

3. He announces a plan for capturing the baggage.

4. He was kept from making an attack upon the wall by lack of javelins.

5. She takes too much time for preparing food.<sup>1</sup>

## LESSON LXVII.

### READING LESSONS.

**395.** CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.—III.

Proximā nocte centuriōnēs duo ex castris Curiōnis cum legiōnāriis duo et viginti ad Vārum fugiunt. Hī eī nūntiant quam forsitan habuērunt opiniōnem ; dicunt tōtum exercitum Curiōnis nūllum pūgnandi studium habēre, māximumque opus esse in cōspectum exercitūs eīus venīre et dicendi militibus **facultātem** dare.

Erat in exercitū Vārī Quintilius, quī in Ītaliā sē suāsque cōpiās Caesarī in dēditiōnem dederat. Hic dī-missus ā Caesare in Āfricam vēnerat, **quod** bellum gerendi **facultātem** petēbat, legiōnēsque eās tradūxerat Curiō quās superiōribus tempori-

<sup>1</sup> **cibus**, -ī.

bus ex eō recēperat Caesar. Hōc virō ad rem gerendam Vārus ūtitur.

Centuriōnum opiniōne ad-ductus Vārus posterō diē legiōnēs ex castris ē-dūcit, **quod** Quīntiliō **facultātem** dīcendī dare vult. Facit idem Curiō, **quod** Vārus proelium committendī **facultātem** dare vidētur, atque suās uterque cōpiās instruit. Hāc **facultāte** dīcendī ūsus, Quīntilius aciem Curiōnis circum-ivit atque legiōnāriīs dixit, “ Prīmam sacrāmētī, quod apud mē dixistis, memoriā dē-ponere atque bellum gerere nōlīte contrā eōs quī eādē fortūnā ūsī sumus. Sī mē atque Vārum sequēminī complūra dōna vōbīs dabimus.”

Sed nūllam in partem ab exercitū Curiōnis haec eō tempore grāta vidēbantur, atque ita suās uterque cōpiās re-dūxit.

Curiō dixit, “ Cum primum pūgnandī **facultās** erit data, proeliō rem committam.” Posterō diē cōpiās productās eōdem locō quō superiōribus diēbus instrūxerat, in aciē conlocāvit. Vārus quoque cum pūgnandī studiō suās cōpiās prō-dūxit. Erat vallis inter duās aciēs, nōn ita māgna, sed difficilī ascēnsū. Subitō ā sinistrō cornū Vārī equitātus omnis atque multae levis armātūrae cum sē in vallem dē-mitterent vidēbantur. Ad hōs Curiō equitātum et duās cohortēs misit, quōrum primum impetum equitēs Vārī nōn sustinuērunt, sed celeriter ad suōs fūgērunt. Levis armātūrae, relictæ, circum-ventæ sunt ā nostris atque interfectæ sunt.

Ita omnēs quī erant tōtā in aciē Vārī suōs perterritōs fugere vidēbant. Tum Rebilus, lēgātus Caesaris quem Curiō sēcum ex Siciliā dūxerat **quod** eum māgnū cōnsiliū in bellum gerendō habere **exīstimābat**, “ Perterritum,” dixit, “ hostem vidēs, Curiō ! Cūr ita secundō tempore ūtī nōn vīs ? ” Curiō signum dedit, et in vallem aciem dūxit. Difficilis militibus ascēnsus vallis erat, sed Vārī militēs, fugā suōrum perterritī, nihil dē sēsē dēfendendō **exīstimābant**. **Quod** omnes militēs Vārī sē ab equitātū circum-veniri **exīstimāvērunt** fugā sē in castra recipere contendunt.

Quā in fugā Fabius, quīdam miles ex exercitū Curiōnis primum agmen fugientium secūtus “ Vāre ! Vāre ! ” appellābat,

ut ā Vārō ūnus esse ex ēius militibus et monēre aliquid velle **exīstimārētur**. Cum ille saepius appellātus stetit ut eī diceret, umerum gladiō vulnerāre Fabius temptāvit, quod periculum ille scūtō vix vitāvit. Fabius ā proximīs militibus circum-ventus interfectus est.

Hāc fugientium multitūdine portae castrōrum occupantur atque iter impeditur, plūrēsq̄ue in eō locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut fugā interfectī sunt. Tamen Curiō castra nōn oppūgnāre temptāvit, **quod** sē natūrā locī prohibērī **exīstimāvit**. Exercitum in sua castra redūxit.

Nostrōrum nūllus miles praeter Fabium interfectus est: ex numerō hostium sexcentī interfectī atque mille vulnerātī sunt.

## 396.

## WORD-LIST.

**facultās, facultātis**, f., *ability, opportunity*. Plural also, *resources*.

**exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *to suppose, think*.

**quod**, *because*.

## 397.

1. By chance three hostages were wounded by the frightened horsemen.

2. He is afraid that the footman has wounded your foot with his sword.

3. The soldiers, tired out by the long march, were unable to defend themselves, and were killed while trying to retreat.

4. He is unwilling that you should give help to his son.

5. Bibulus stationed the ships of the fleet along <sup>1</sup> the whole <sup>2</sup> shore, so that Caesar was unable for a long time to obtain more troops.

6. He refused to flee, saying that it was better to be killed.

<sup>1</sup> per.

<sup>2</sup> tōtus, -a, -um.



7. This is a good plan for carrying on the war, but that is a better (one).

8. He wishes her to follow him to Rome, but she is unwilling to leave her son.

9. The messenger said that the cohorts had occupied the top of the mountain for two days.

10. The people went to see the army as it was setting out.

11. They will not have time to lead (of leading) the cohorts to the hill.

12. This is a very suitable spot for placing a camp.

13. It was reported to Caesar that this chief had persuaded many of the Gauls to make<sup>1</sup> war (378, N. 1).

14. Is the soldier able to use this javelin?

15. When fifty-five had been killed, the rest gave their chief as a hostage.

## LESSON LXVIII.

### 398.

### EXAMPLES.

**Legiōnem tibi praesidiō dat,** *He gives the legion to you as a guard (for a defence).*

**Peditēs auxiliō mittit,** *He sends foot-soldiers as a reinforcement.*

Notice that **praesidiō** and **auxiliō** denote the end or purpose which **legiōnem** and **peditēs** serve.

Notice in the first sentence that the same sentence may contain a dative of service and an indirect object.

**Dative of End or Service.**

**399. RULE.**—The **end** or **purpose** which an object serves may be denoted by the **dative**.

**400. RULE.**—Many verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super** are followed by the **dative**.

**Dative with Compounds.**

<sup>1</sup> gerō.



a. These verbs are **intransitive**, that is, they do not take a direct object. The **dative** which follows them is an **in-direct object** (23).

b. All of the compounds of **sum** govern the **dative**, excepting **possum** (486) and **ab-sum**.

c. **Prae-ficiō** takes both a **dative** and an **accusative** (cp. e.g. 401, 11, 17).

d. **Prae-mittō** does not come under this rule.

#### 401.

1. Māgnās cōpiās praesidiō nāvibus reliquit.

2. Brittanī perturbātī hunc tōtī bellō prae-fēcerant.

3. Caesar eōs praesidiō utrisque castris reliquit.

4. Id sī facient māgnō cum periculō nostris erit.

5. Ūna rēs erat māgnō ūsuī nostris.

6. His prae-erat Viridovix.

7. Cum nox oppūgnandī finem fēcisset, Rēmus, quī oppidō prae-fuerat, nūntium ad Caesarem misit, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse. Nocte Caesar, iisdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ā Rēmō vēnerant, sagittāriōs auxiliō misit.

8. Ad flūmen partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut aut castellum, cui prae-erat Titurius, expūgnārent aut agrōs Rēmōrum occupārent, quī māgnō ūsuī nobis ad bellum gerendum erant.

9. Māgnō ūsuī ei erit sī loca, flūmina, silvās cōgnōscet.

10. Hōc periculō cōgnitō Caesar equitātum auxiliō misit.

11. Omnem equitātum prae-misit. His Cottam lēgātum prae-fēcit.

12. Brūtus classī prae-erat.

13. Illi, ē-ductis iīs cohortibus quae, praesidiō castris relictae, nōn dēfessae labōre erant, celeriter ad eum locum pervēnerunt.

14. Ut nāves longae parvum spatium ab onerāriīs nāvibus conlocārentur imperāvit, quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostris fuit.

15. Id cum cōgnitum est, Crassus, quī equitātui prae-erat, tertiam aciem nostris labōrantibus misit.

16. Omnia dê-erant quae ad impetum faciendum erant ūsui.

17. Caesar in hiberna in Sêquanōs exercitum dūxit : hibernis Labiēnum prae-fēcit.

#### 402.

1. Caesar placed other legates over the fifth legion.
2. The cohort was a protection to the baggage.
3. They sent the footmen as an aid to the cohorts.
4. The weapons were of great use to me.
5. The legate who commands these legions has persuaded Caesar to place you over the cavalry.
6. Of what use are these hostages ?
7. The German cavalry were a great help to Caesar.
8. He sent forward the cavalry, but hastened himself to the nearest hill to defend<sup>1</sup> the baggage there.
9. These javelins will be a great help to us in attacking the town.
10. He is unable to persuade me to hurry<sup>1</sup> to the city.

### LESSON LXIX.

#### 403.

Hoste oppūgnante,  
fūgērunt, { *The enemy attacking,  
When the enemy attacked,  
Because the enemy at-  
tacked,* } *they fled.*

Datō sīgnō, proe-  
lium commīsīt, { *The signal having been  
given,  
When the signal had been  
given,  
Because the signal had  
been given,  
(Having given the signal),* } *he began  
the battle.*

<sup>1</sup> Not infinitive.

**Multīs obsidibus ad Caesarem ā Gallīs missīs, pācem fēcit,** *When many hostages had been sent (many hostages having been sent) by the Gauls to Caesar, he made peace.*

<b>Antōniō lēgātō, vincēmus,</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Antony being legate,} \\ \textit{If Antony be legate,} \\ \textit{Since Antony will be} \\ \textit{legate,} \end{array} \right.$	<i>we will conquer.</i>
--------------------------------------	--	-----------------------------

*a.* In these sentences notice that **oppūgnante, datō** and **missīs** are participles in the ablative case, agreeing with the nouns **hoste, sīgnō** and **obsidibus** respectively.

*b.* Notice that this union of **noun** and **participle** in the **ablative** makes a **complete clause**, which can be translated in various ways in English.

*c.* Notice that either noun or participle may have **modifying words** dependent upon them, as **multīs, ad Caesarem** and **ā Gallīs** in the third sentence. **Ablative Absolute.**

*d.* There is no participle in the last sentence. This is because the verb **sum** has no present participle.

*e.* This construction of the participle with a noun is grammatically **independent** of the rest of the sentence, like a parenthesis in English. Hence it is called the **Ablative Absolute**.

*f.* The noun or pronoun in the ablative in this construction cannot refer to the subject or object of the main verb of the sentence.

*g.* The ablative absolute is a common construction with the perfect passive participle. Can you see any reason why? (Cp. 357, *a.*)

#### 404.

1. **Nāvibus complūribus factīs, classem sequī cōnātī sunt.**

2. **Ibi Ceutronēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, ex itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.**

3. **Complūribus proeliis gessīs in fīnēs Vocontiōrum pervēnit.**

4. **Hōc proeliō factō trāns flūmen exercitum trādūcit.**

5. Quibus rēbus cōgnītis per **finēs** Sēquanōrum equitātum trādūcere **cōnātus est**, obsidēsque eis dedit.

6. Eā rē permissā ex **finibus** suis in silvās fugere **cōnābantur**.

7. Eō conciliō dī-missō principēs cum Caesare **loquī** voluerunt.

8. Obsidibus datīs in eōrum **finēs** tamen equitātum dūcere **cōnābantur**.

9. Rē frumentāriā parātā māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

10. Occupātō oppidō ibi legiōnāriōs conlocat.

11. Caesar **loquendī finem** facit sēque ad suōs recipit.

12. Proelium nōn committēbat, nē superātis hostibus dīci posset eōs ab sē in conloquiō circum-ventōs esse.

#### 405.

#### WORD-LIST.

**finis, finis**, m., *limit, end*. Plural, *borders, hence, country, land*.

**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus**, *to attempt, try*.

**loquor, loquī, locūtus**, *to speak, say*.

406. (Where possible use the Ablative Absolute in these sentences.)

1. When the line had been drawn up, he began the battle.

2. When this hill had been seized, he tried to capture the next.

3. After the camp had been placed, he sent his cavalry to the fields.

4. When this thing had been done, he prepared to make an attack.

5. Since four messengers had been sent, he did not send more.

6. He attacked the enemy while they were preparing to flee.

7. When hostages had been given he set out for Italy.

8. Having learned this, he hastened to Rome.

9. When we have waged this war all Gaul will have been overcome.

10. With Caesar as leader what can we fear?

11. The hostages who have been given by the Gauls are the children of chiefs.

12. Having followed the enemy, he began battle.

## LESSON LXX.

**407.** Review carefully 274-277.

**408.** The tenses of the **Indicative** which denote **present** or **future** time (the **Present**, **Future**, and **Future Perfect**) are called **primary tenses**.

The tenses of the **Indicative** which denote **past** time (the **Imperfect**, **Perfect** and **Pluperfect**) are called **secondary tenses**. Primary and Secondary Tenses.

**409.** The rule given in 277 can be restated thus:

A **primary tense** in the main clause is followed by the **present subjunctive**.

A **secondary tense** in the main clause is followed by the **imperfect subjunctive**.

Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

**410.**

EXAMPLES.

**Timeō** ut nūntium mīserit, *I am afraid that he did not send the messenger.*

**Timēbam** ut nūntium mīsisset, *I was afraid that he had not sent the messenger.*

a. Notice that the subjunctives in these sentences represent their action as completed at the time denoted by the main verbs.

b. Notice that the primary tense **timeō** is followed by the Perfect Subjunctive, and the secondary tense **timēbam** by the pluperfect subjunctive.

c. The **perfect** and **pluperfect** tenses of the **subjunctive** have the **same meaning**. They denote **completed action**. Full Rule for Sequence of Tenses. See 411.



**411. RULE.**—A **primary** tense in the main clause is followed by the **present** or **perfect subjunctive**.

A **secondary** tense in the main clause is followed by the **imperfect** or **pluperfect subjunctive**.

**412.****EXAMPLES.**

**Dīcit cum vēnerit tē ēdere,** *He says that you were eating when he came.*

**Dixit cum vēnisset tē ēdere,** *He said that you were eating when he came.*

**Dīcit cum veniat tē laetum futūrum esse,** *He says that you will be glad when he comes.*

**Dixit cum venīret tē laetum futūrum esse,** *He said that you would be glad when he came.*

*a.* The **cum** clauses in these sentences are in the indirect statement, since they are a part of what is quoted, but are in subordinate clauses, since they are introduced by the subordinate particle **cum**, and hence their verbs cannot be put in the infinitive (341).

*b.* Notice that their verbs (**vēnerit**, **vēnisset**, **veniat**, **venīret**) are in the **subjunctive**, and follow the rule for sequence of tenses (411).

**413. RULE.**—The **main verb** of an **indirect statement** is put in the **infinitive**, with subject **accusa-** Full Rule for In-  
**tive**, and depends upon the verb or expression direct Statements.  
of **saying, thinking** or **perceiving**.

The **Subordinate clauses** of an indirect statement have their verbs in the **subjunctive**, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

**414.****THE APPEAL OF DIVITIACUS.**

Divitiacus Haedus Caesarī ita locūtus est; Cīvitātem Haeduōrum armis contendisse cum Germānis quōs cīvitās Sēquanōrum auxiliō trāns Rhēnum flūmen trādūxisset. Superātōs, quī suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī amicitīā plūrimū



ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, ut suā cīvītās ā populō Rōmānō auxilium nōn peteret. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvītāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuisset, ut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvītāte fūgisse et Rōmam vēnisse ut auxilium peteret, quod sōlus nōn obsidibus tenērētur.

Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quem Haeduīs ac-cidisse, quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, tertiam partem agrī eōrum, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc alteram partem tertiam occupāre vellet, quod Germānōrum milia hominum quattuor et vīgintī ad eum vēnissent, quibus locum parāret. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs ut omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trāns-īrent. Caesarem sōlum Galliam omnem ab Ariovistō posse dēfendere.

#### 415.

1. Caesar said that he gave the opportunity of beginning battle to Ariovistus when the line of battle had been drawn up, but that the latter restrained his men from battle, because he did not think the time a suitable one.

2. He learned that the council of the Gauls had been held <sup>1</sup> for many years at this place.

3. When his soldiers were pressed for want of water, he persuaded them to send him as an envoy to Caesar.

4. They defended this region with the greatest courage, so that the enemy were not able even <sup>2</sup> to seize the grain in the fields.

5. Turn 414 from **Sed pēius** to the end into a direct statement.

<sup>1</sup> habeō.

<sup>2</sup> etiam.

## LESSON LXXI.

THE IRREGULAR VERB EŌ, *GO*.

Principal Parts, *eō*, *īre*, *īvī* (*iī*), (*itūrus*).

**416.** Learn the conjugation of *eō* (488).

**417.**

## EXAMPLES.

*Ex castrīs profectus est*, *He set out from the camp.*

*Populus frūmentō caruit*, *The people were in want of grain.*

*Equī aquā prīvātī sunt ut milītēs biberent*, *The horses were deprived of water in order that the soldiers might drink.*

Notice that in the last two sentences the idea of separation or privation (expressed in the first by *ex*) is expressed by the ablatives *frūmentō* and *aquā* without a preposition.

**418. RULE.**—**Separation** is expressed by the **ablative**, often without a preposition.

**Ablative  
of Separation.**

**419.**

1. *Frūmentum ut quisque domō ex-portāret imperāvērunt.*
2. *Dixit Haeduis sē redditūrum obsidēs nōn esse.*
3. *Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō ex-ire possent.*

4. *Octāvius, cum iis quās habēbat nāvibus, Salonās pervēnit. Cīvēs cum nōn perterrere posset, oppidum oppugnāre cōnātus est. Complūribus interfectis Octāvius Dyrrhachium sēsē ad Pompēium recēpit.*

5. *Multōs dies terrā prohibitus, tandem cum classe ex-iiit.*

6. *Tigurīni, cum domō ex-issent, patrum nostrōrum memoriā Pisōnem lēgātum interfecerant.*

7. *Ille Oricum proficiscitur. Tum subitō Apollōniam it. Staberius Apollōniā, quī huic oppidō prae-erat, fūgit.*

8. *Equitibus per litus conlocātis, Antōnius aquā classem prohibēbat.*

9. Duæ fuērunt Ariovisti uxōres, ūna quam **domō** sēcum dūxerat, altera quæ Suēba natiōne erat.

10. Proeliō abs-tinēbat.

11. Ariovistus milibus passuum duōbus ultrā Caesarem castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō, ut frūmentō eum prohibēret. Caesar, nē diūtius frūmentō prohibērētur, ultrā illum alia castra posuit.

12. Quod, omne frūmentō ā-missō, in suā terrā nihil est, Allobrogibus imperat ut iis frūmenti cōpiam faciant.

13. Calēnus, legiōnibus in nāvēs im-positis, nāvēs solvit.

14. Hī, cum essent ex terrā Ēpirī visi, Copōnius, quī classi prae-erat, nāvēs suās Dyrrhachiō ē-dūxit.

## 420.

## WORD-LIST.

**domus, domūs, (domī), f., house, home (472).**

## 421.

1. He told me that he was going home.<sup>1</sup>

2. He wished you to go with us.

3. When he left home he first went to see you.

4. We are going to the river to bring water (back) home.<sup>1</sup>

5. He will attempt to keep the Romans out of his country.

6. He said that he would not begin battle, since the army of the other legate had retreated.

7. They said that they were unable to persuade the Allobroges to keep<sup>2</sup> their men from battle.

8. Marcus says that he surpasses all other men in bravery.

9. Kept<sup>2</sup> from (securing) grain for a long time, he at length went away.

10. He is collecting many things suitable for waging war.

<sup>1</sup> 360, c.

<sup>2</sup> 419, 5.

## LESSON LXXII.

**422.** Read again 278, 279, 308, 309.

When the **subject** of a verb in a subordinate clause denoting **purpose** (or **result**) is **different** from the **subject** of the **main verb** of the sentence, **quī** (and not **ut**) introduces the subordinate clause.

**Lēgātus Galbam mittit, quī locī nātūram cōgnōscat,**  
*The legate sends Galba, who is to find out the nature of the place;*  
 or, *The legate sends Galba to find out the nature of the place.*

Subjunctive in  
Relative Clauses.

**Mārcus hominem mīsīt quī cōgnōsceret,**  
*Marcus sent a man who should find out.*

**Mārcus hominem mīsīt ut cōgnōsceret,** *Marcus sent a man in order that he (himself, Marcus) might find out.*

The last two sentences illustrate the distinction between **quī** and **ut**.

**423.** When a clause introduced by a relative pronoun denotes **cause**, its verb is put in the **subjunctive**.

**Fortissimus erat Mārcus, quī trēs Gallōs cēpisset,** *Marcus was very brave, who captured three Gauls (for he captured three Gauls).*

**424.** Sometimes relative clauses other than those just described have the verb in the subjunctive.

*a.* This is usually the case when the antecedent is **indefinite** (as, **aliquis**, *anyone*) or general, (as, **omnia**, *all things*). In such a case it is evidently the purpose of the relative clause to define or **characterize the antecedent**.

**Hominem vidēō quī sit caecus,** *I see a man who is blind.*

**Hōc nūntiāvit cuiādam quī esset meus amīcus,** *He told this to one who is my friend.*

*b.* From this fact all such clauses are called **clauses of characteristic**.

**425. RULE.**—**Relative** clauses of **purpose, result, cause,** and **characteristic** take the **subjunctive**.

**426.**

**EXAMPLES.**

*Cum obsidēs dedissent, pūgnāre nōluērunt, Since they had given hostages, they refused to fight.*

*Cum paucī sint, tamen pūgnābunt, Although they are few, still they will fight.*

**427. RULE.**—**Cum**, when it means *since* **Cum Causal or Concessive.** or *although*, takes the **subjunctive**.

**428.**

1. Equitātum omnem prae-mittit, quī videant quas in partēs hostēs iter faciant.

2. Hominem quī nātūram montis cōgnōsceret mīsit.

3. Equitātum quī sustinēret hostium impetum miserat.

4. Quō aqua portārī posset nihil erat relictum.

5. Lēgātus erat māgnā virtūte, quī interficī quam exercitū ā-missō salūtem petere māllet.

6. Haec cum ita sint fugā salūtem petet.

7. Nūllus miles erat quī equitātum rēgis Iubae nōn timēret.

8. Nōn is sum quī proelī periculō perterrērar.

9. Tum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsit.

10. Duās legiōnēs in interiōrem Galliam quī dūceret lēgātum mīsit.

11. Quis est quī hōc facere audeat?

12. Sōlī centum erant quī portās dēfendere possent.

13. Hunc lēgātum Caesar idōneum iūdicāverat quem mitteret.

14. Haec arma cui dabō, quī nēminem alium praeter tē videam?

15. Ibi partem suōrum militum trādūcere cōnātī sunt qui cum hoste pūgnārent.



16. Primōs quī flūmen trāns-ierant nostrō equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

17. Caesar, aciē instrūctā, equitātum mittit quī hostium impetum sustineat.

18. Multī erant quī hiberna oppugnāre vellent.

#### 429.

1. He will send a horseman to inform the legate.

2. What soldier was there who did not wish to attack the enemy?

3. A hill that is high can be easily defended.

4. A camp which is placed upon the top of a hill cannot be easily captured.

5. Although the Gauls had fled to the forests, he hastened to depart from their country.

6. He wishes to see some one who will tell him about<sup>1</sup> this matter.

7. What high hill is there in this region, which we can easily defend?

8. He thinks that this mountain is much higher than that.

9. Although the Gauls have given many hostages to the Germans, they fear that the latter will send another army to attack them.

10. He says that he will not fight with a man who is smaller than he (is).

### LESSON LXXIII.

#### THE IRREGULAR VERBS FERŌ AND FĪŌ.

Principal Parts: { ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.  
                              { fīō, fierī, factus sum.

**430.** Learn the conjugation of ferō and fīō (489, 490).

*a.* Fīō is used as the passive of faciō (except in some compounds).

*b.* The *i* is long except when followed by **-er** and in **fit**.

<sup>1</sup> *dē*

## 431.

## 1. Learn to unite

A **genitive** with the **nearest** noun or pronoun.

A **preposition** with its noun. The noun **follows** the preposition.

**Adjectives** with words in the same cases.

The **infinitive**, if **not** following a verb of saying, thinking, etc., with the nearest **following** indicative or subjunctive (155); if following a verb of saying, thinking, etc., with this verb, translating it as the main verb of the quotation, (i.e. the verb introduced in English by "that." Cp. 413).

2. As regards nouns and adjectives, think of the commoner forms and constructions first. Learn to think of

Hints for Reading.

A **nominative** as a **subject**.

The **endings -m, -ōs, -ās** as denoting the **object**.

The **ending -a** as denoting, first, the **object** in the accusative neuter plural; then, the **nominative** neuter plural; and lastly, the nominative singular feminine.

The **ending -ā** as denoting the **ablative** feminine.

An **ablative**, if **alone**, as denoting **cause** or **means**.

An **adjective** standing **alone** (or a **pronoun** standing alone) in the nominative or accusative as referring, if masculine, to people; if neuter, to things.

The **endings -īs, and -ibus** as first, the ablative, and then, the dative.

## 432. CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.—IV.

Posterō diē Curiō vallum circum Uticam dūcere parāvit. Multitūdine in oppidō perterritā dē deditiōne omnēs iam loquēbantur, et cum Vārō gerēbant, nē hōc bellō omnium fortūnās perturbārī vellet. Haec cum loquēbantur nūntiī prae-missī ab Iubā rēge vērunt, quī locūtī sunt illum celeriter venīre cum māgnīs cōpiīs. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Curiōnī, sed quod iam Caesaris rēs secundae<sup>1</sup> in Āfricā nū-

<sup>1</sup> Caesar's successes against Afranius.

tiātae erant, nihil contrā sē rēgem factūrum esse existimābat.

Sed cum certīs nūntiīs Curiō cōgnōscit minus quinque et vīginti milibus passuum longē ab Uticā Iubae rēgis cōpiās abesse, relictīs castrīs sēsē in Castra Cornēlia rūsus recipit. Ad hunc locum frūmentum portāre castraque conlocāre cōstituit, atque in Siciliam mittit, ut duae legiōnēs reliquusque equitātus ad sē mittātur. Castra haec erant ad bellum dūcendum aptissima natūrā locī et aquae salisque cōpiā et quod ad lītus erat. Itaque Curiō reliquās cōpiās exspectāre et bellum dūcere cōstituit.

### 433.

1. While Caesar was waging war in Spain, Curio was fighting in Africa.

2. This was announced to him while he was speaking to his friends in the council.

3. Since the cavalry had become terrified, the legionary soldiers were unable to hold the hill.

4. When this battle had been fought, he set out for the winter camp.

5. He is afraid to do this.

6. He wished them to go home (360, c).

7. When he goes<sup>1</sup> to Gaul he will wage war upon all who refuse to give him hostages.

8. He wishes to place the winter camp in this region, but fears that there is no suitable place.

### 434.

#### WORD-LIST FOR REVIEW.

praeda, praedae	centuriō, -ōnis	impetus, -ūs
-----------------	-----------------	--------------

alius, -a, -ud	civitas, -ātis
----------------	----------------

certus, -a, -um	facultas, -ātis	aciēs, aciēi
-----------------	-----------------	--------------

finis, finis	diēs, diēi
--------------	------------

facilis, facile	opus, operis	rēs, rēi
-----------------	--------------	----------

quod

<sup>1</sup> Future Perfect.

ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fuī.

possum, posse, potuī.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsī, persuāsus.

sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentus.

timeō, timēre, timuī, —.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, cōāctus.

cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnītus.

īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstruxī, īnstrūctus.

ponō, ponere, posuī, positus.

relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus.

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugītus.

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus.

recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus.

eō, īre, ivī (iī), (itūrus).

cōnōr, cōnārī, cōnātus.

loquōr, loquī, locūtus.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus.

sequor, sequī, secūtus.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus.

volō, velle, voluī.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.







## LESSON LXXIV.

## READING LESSONS.

435.

CURIO IN ĀFRICĀ.—V.

His rēbus cōstitutis ex quibusdam quī ex oppidō fūgerant audit Iubam rēgem rūsus ad ēius terram bellō contendere coāctum esse, atque Saburram, ēius ducem, cum parvīs cōpiīs missum prope Uticam esse. Itaque rem proeliō committere cōstituit.

Equitātum omnem primā nocte ad castra hostium mittere cōstituit, ad flūmen Bagradam, quibus castris prae-erat Suburra, dē quō ante erat audītum, sed rēx Iuba omnibus cōpiīs sequēbātur et sex milibus passuum ab-erat. Equitēs missi nocte ad hostēs nihil timentēs impetum faciunt, multōs interficiunt; complūrēs perterriti fugiunt. Quō factō ad Curiōnem equitēs rūsus veniunt captivōsque ad eum re-dūcunt.

Curiō cum omnibus cōpiīs ex-ierat, cohortibus quīnque castris praesidiō relictis. Profectus milia passuum sex ad equitēs vēnit, et rem gestam cōgnōvit. Captivōs vīdit, et ex iis quaesivit, “Quis castris ad Bagradam flūmen prae-est?” respondērunt, “Saburra.” Reliqua studiō itineris cōn-ficiendī ex captivīs quaerere praeter-misit, sed, militibus quī proxima signa sequēbantur loquēns, “Vidētisne,” dixit, “captivōrum ōrātiōnem convenīre cum ōrātiōne eōrum quī ex hoste ad nōs fūgērunt? ab-esse rēgem, parvās esse cōpiās missās, paucīs equitibus parēs esse nōn potuērunt. Ad praedam, ad glōriam properāte!”

Equitēs praetereā captōs hominēs equōsque producēbant; itaque Curiōnis militibus studia nōn dē-erant. Equitātui ut sēsē sequerētur imperāvit ipseque magis properāvit, ut ad hostēs ex fugā perterritōs venīre posset. Sed equitēs, itinere tōtius noctis cōn-fecti, sequi nōn poterant, atque aliī aliō locō stābant. Iuba rēx, certior factus ā Saburrā dē superiōre proe-

liō duo milia eōrum equitum quōs praesidiō circum sē habēbat et partem peditum ad Saburram mīsit ; ipse cum reliquīs cōpiīs elephantisque sexāgintā secūtus est. Existimāns prae-missis equitibus ipsum ventūrum esse Curiōnem, Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque instrūxit, cōpiīs suis imperāvit ut adventū Curiōnis visō paulātim sē recipere ; sēsē dixit cum opus esset signum proeli datūrum esse. Curiō, cum hostēs quod ā Saburrā imperātum erat id facere atque sē recipere vidit, existimāns eōs quī superiōre nocte equitibus perterriti fūgissent rūsus fugere, ut sequerētur cōpiās ex locis superiōribus in campum dūxit. Quibus ex locis cum longius esset profectus, dedit suis signum Saburra et, circum-iēns aciem imperāvit ut equitēs in aciem Curiōnis mitterentur.

Cum equitēs Saburrae in aciem Curiōnis impetum ita fēcē-runt Curiō nōn dē-erat virtūte, neque dēfessis militibus neque equitibus, paucis et labōre cōn-fectis, studium ad pūgnandum virtūsque dē-erat. Equitēs erant numerō ducenti ; reliquī in itinere steterant. Hī quamcumque in partem impetum faciē-bant, hostēs ex eō locō fugere cōgēbant, sed equis dēfessis nōn longius fugientēs sequi poterant. Equitātus hostium ab utrōque cornū aciem nostram circum-ībant. Cum nostrī co-hortēs ex aciē prō-cucurissent, hostēs celeriter impetum nos-trōrum ex-fugiēbant, rūsusque ad aciem redire cōnātōs novō impetū circum-ībant, ut māgnā cum difficultāte ad suam aciem rūsus venire nostrī possent. Novae cōpiae mis-sis ā rēge auxiliīs perveniēbant. Nostrī dēfessī erant et vulnerātis nūllus tūtus locus erat, quod tōta aciēs equitātū hostium tenēbātur.

Curiō perterritis omnibus ūnam rem reliquam esse existi-māns, suis militibus imperāvit ut proximōs collis caperent. Sed hōs quoque prae-occupāverat missus ā Saburrā equitātus. Tum vērō, nūllā spē salūtis relictā, ad summam dēsperātiō-nem nostrī pervēnērunt. Complūrēs, fugientēs, ab equitātū interfecti sunt ; aliī salūtem fugā nōn petēbant sed in ipsō locō ubi stābant dēfessī atque sine spē procumbēbant.

Ad Curiōnem Domitius, dux equitum, cum paucis equitibus veniēns, eum salūtem fugā petere et ad castra contendere voluit; hanc ūnam spem eī relinqui atque sē ab eō nōn exitūrum dixit. Sed Curiō numquam sē, ā-missō exercitū quem ā Caesare sili com-missum accēpisset, in eīus cōspectum rūsus venīre dixit, atque ita pūgnāns interfectus est.

Equitēs ex proeliō paucī sē recēpērunt; sed ii quī ad novissimum agmen equōrum re-ficiendōrum causā steterant, fugā tōtius exercitūs visā, salūtem fugā petivērunt atque sēsē celeriter in castra recēpērunt. Militēs ad ūnum omnēs interfecti sunt.

Quī in castris praesidiō ā Curiōne relictī erant, hōrum paucī nāvibus in Siciliam fugere potuērunt; reliquī Vārō, quī ad Uticam erat, sē in deditiōnem dedērunt. Quōrum complūrēs Iuba rēx Vārō nōlente interfēcit; paucōs captivōs in terram suam mīsīt.

FĪNIS.

**436.** (See that the sentences in your Latin translation of this exercise are as long as the English sentences, which follow the Latin idiom.)

The Romans set out with ten cohorts to march through (397, N. 1.) the forest to the winter camp. When they had gone a short distance<sup>1</sup> the Gallic cavalry began<sup>2</sup> to harass the rear rank. While the rear line of march was being thus harassed by the Gallic horsemen, the rest of the Gauls suddenly attacked the three foremost cohorts from two directions, in order that they might throw them into great confusion (greatly disturb them). The foremost soldiers, (though) in confusion, none the less<sup>3</sup> did not flee, but, hastily following the legate with the cohort which was in the rear rank of the three, they seized the nearest hill as quickly as possible. When the line of battle had been

<sup>1</sup> spatium.

<sup>2</sup> coepērunt.

<sup>3</sup> tamen.



formed in this place they defended themselves with great bravery for a long time, supposing that the other seven cohorts would come to give them help.

But the other legate, who was over these cohorts, being informed by a few soldiers who had fled at the first attack that the greater part of the soldiers of the first three cohorts had been killed, and that the rest were following in flight,<sup>1</sup> fearing lest his own soldiers would be disturbed, commanded (419, 1) them to withdraw to a suitable place, where,<sup>2</sup> during the rest of the day, he was (engaged in) fortifying<sup>3</sup> a camp.

Meantime<sup>4</sup> the soldiers of the three cohorts, lacking everything of use for fortifying a camp, since their baggage had been captured at the first attack, wearied by the previous march, and so<sup>5</sup> few in number that no chance was given of sending fresh soldiers to stand<sup>6</sup> in the line in the place of those who were wounded or killed, were compelled to defend themselves with their swords and shields.<sup>7</sup> When at length<sup>8</sup> (only) a small part of the day was left the centurions, since many soldiers were wounded or dead, (and) the rest were terrified, not knowing where the remaining cohorts were and supposing that they, pressed by the Gauls, were unable to send help, fearing also<sup>9</sup> lest they all be killed during the night, persuaded the legate to ask for the chief of the Gauls and confer with (talk with) him as to<sup>10</sup> surrender.<sup>11</sup>

When opportunity was given in this way, the three cohorts, when the legate and six centurions had been given as hostages, surrendered to the Gauls.

<sup>1</sup> fuga. <sup>2</sup> ubi. <sup>3</sup> mūniō, mūnīre. <sup>4</sup> interim. <sup>5</sup> tam. <sup>6</sup> stō, stāre.  
<sup>7</sup> scutum. <sup>8</sup> tandem. <sup>9</sup> quoque. <sup>10</sup> dē. <sup>11</sup> dēditiō.



## LESSON LXXV.

437.

EXAMPLES.

DIRECT QUESTIONS.

Ubi est?

*Where is he?*

Ubi erās?

*Where were you?*

Ubi vēnistis?

*Where did you go?*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

Cōgnōscam ubi sit,

*I will find out where he is.*

Quaerit ubi sīs,

*He asks where you were.*

Quaesivit ubi essēs,

*He asked where* Indirect  
Questions.  
*you were.*

Scit ubi vēneritis,

*He knows where you went.*

Scīvit ubi vēnissētis,

*He knew where you went.*

a. Compare these two sets of sentences, and determine from them what constitutes an **indirect question** in **Latin**.

b. Is it the same as an indirect question in English grammar?

c. Notice that indirect questions follow verbs denoting mental action, but that they do **not** follow the rule for indirect statements (413).

d. Notice that they conform to the rule for sequence of tenses (411).

**438. RULE.**—An **indirect question** takes the **subjunctive**.

439.

EXAMPLE.

Quam m̄xima oppida cēpit, *He took as many towns as possible.*

Quam with  
Superlative.

This sentence illustrates a use of **quam** with the superlative.

**440.**

1. Ab his quaerit quae civitatēs in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent.

2. Equitibus imperat ut quam māximum frūmentum agris hostium ex-portent.

3. Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat.

4. Eius rei quae esset causa ex ipsis quaesivit.

5. Quam plūrimās civitatēs occupāre volēbat.

6. Caesar quam māximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulterīorem contendit. Quam māximum potest militum numerum coēgit.

7. Con-vocātō conciliō et ad id concilium ad-hibitīs centuriōnibus Caesar ex iis quaesivit cūr quaererentur aut quam in partem aut quō cōsiliō dūcerentur: quid timērentur? cūr sēsē dē-esse virtūte existimārent?

8. Ariovistus ā Caesare quaerit quid sibi velit; cūr in suās possessiōnēs veniat.

9. Ad Ariovistum lēgātōs Caesar misit; quōs cum in suis castris Ariovistus vidisset, con-clāmāvit quid ad sē venirent. Sed cōnantēs dicere prohibuit.

10. Cum ex captivīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus nōn pūgnāret, dixerunt eās mulierēs quae nūntiārent utrum proelium ex ūsū esset nec-ne, ita dicere, nōn Germānōs superātūrōs esse si ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

11. Cum ille homō quis sit mihi nūntiāre nōlit, ei nōn mittam ut in domum eat.

**441.**

1. We asked what you wanted.

2. He takes as much grain as possible.

3. He asked whether the soldiers wished to fight.

4. They ask who the most powerful man in this state may be.

5. He is informed that they are collecting as many soldiers as possible.

6. When Ariovistus saw the envoys of Caesar, he asked why they had come to his camp.

7. He hurried into Italy by the longest marches possible.

8. He orders (419, 1) his soldiers to carry away as many arms as possible from the camps of the enemy.

9. When this help had been given by the cavalry, the enemy were so pressed by our soldiers that some of them retreated, and some surrendered.

10. He says that they will come.

## LESSON LXXVI.

### 442. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**Conditional** sentences contain two clauses: a **condition** (introduced by *sī*, *if*, or one of its compounds) and a **conclusion**.

443. There are **three classes** of conditional sentences:

#### I. Nothing Implied.

*Sī vēnit, vidērent, If he came, they saw him.*

*Sī veniet, vidēbunt, If he comes, they will see him.*

*Sī id fēcerit, laetus erō, If he does (shall have done) this, I will be glad.*

a. There is nothing in the first two sentences by which one can infer whether the person spoken of came or not.

b. This class makes use of the **indicative** in both clauses.

c. Why is the Latin **future perfect** more exact than the English future in the last sentence?

**RULE.**—**Simple conditional sentences** take the **indicative** in both condition and conclusion.

#### II. Less Vivid Future.

This represents the act as scarcely probable.

*Si veniat, laetus sim, If he should come, I would be glad.*

*a.* Notice that the **present subjunctive** is used in both clauses.

*b.* Notice the tenses “**should**” and “**would**”, used in English in this form of conditional sentence.

RULE.—**Less vivid future conditions** take the **present subjunctive** in both condition and conclusion.

### III. Contrary Implied.

In this class one is able to infer whether the condition has been fulfilled.

For example, we say in English :

*If he had come to town, I would have seen him.*

Has he or has he not come to town?

*If he were in the building, I would know it.*

Is he in the building?

*Sī impetum faceret, hostis nōs nōn premeret, If he were making an attack, the enemy would not be harassing us.*

*Sī impetum fēcisset, hostis nōs nōn premissset, If he had made an attack, the enemy would not have harassed us.*

*a.* Notice that the **subjunctive imperfect** is used in both clauses to denote **present time**, and the **subjunctive pluperfect** in both clauses to denote **past time**.

RULE.—**Conditions contrary to fact** take the **imperfect subjunctive** when referring to **present time**, and the **pluperfect subjunctive** when referring to **past time**.

#### 444.

1. *Sī obsidēs dedissent, bellum iis nōn in-tulisset.*

2. *Sī quid Rōmānis accidat, summam in spem imperi obtinendī Dumnorix veniat.*

3. *Nisi quod in Caesare sit auxilium, omnēs Galli domō ex-eant.*

4. *Sī quid voluissent, vēnissent.*

5. *Id sī fiat, māgnō cum periculō eī sit.*

6. *Militibus pertērritis Caesar dixit; “Sī Ariovistus bellum intulerit, quid timeātis? proximā nocte ad hostem pro-*

ficiscam. Si nēmō praetereā sequātur, tamen ego cum sōlā decimā legiōne ibō, dē quā nōn dubitō.”

7. Lēgātis quī ā Caesare missi quaerēbant ut locum conloquiō dīceret Ariovistus dixit; “Si quid mihi ā Caesare operis esset, ego ad eum venīrem; si quid ille vult, cūr ille ad mē nōn venit?” Caesar respondit; “Si ea quae postulō fēceris, amīcus tibi erō; si nōn faciēs, ego auxilium Haeduīs contrā tē dabō.”

Ariovistus respondit; “Si ipse populō Rōmānō imperārem quās rēs gerant, tum vērō bonā causā ita mihi imperārēs. Si Haeduī ea quae postulō facient, bellum nōn in-feram; sed si id nōn fēcerint, bellum ācritē in-feram. Si auxilium Caesar iīs det contrā Germānōs, quibuscum nēmō sine māgnō periculō contendit, quid possit?”

8. Cum ea ita sint, tamen vōbiscum bellum inferam.

9. Cum māgnā virtūte hīc mīles signum in hostēs in-tulerit, fiet centuriō.

10. Cum hunc rēgem nōn tuleris, illum ferte.

#### 445.

1. If I should ask you for anything, you would give it to me.

2. If he were in the city, I would be there too (436, N. 12).

3. If he had a sword, he would not be able to wound anyone with it.

4. If Ariovistus had not conquered the Haedui, he would not have been attacked by Caesar. If Caesar had not waged war upon him, many more Germans would have crossed the river Rhine.

5. If you wish to speak with me, come to my house.

6. If you had wished to see me, you would have come to me.

7. If you should do this, I would be compelled to be your enemy.

8. If I were your enemy, I would not be giving you aid.



9. If the hostages had been given, there would have been no war.

10. Would we be afraid of them, if they were very brave men ?

## LESSON LXXVII.

## 446.

## EXAMPLES.

POSITIVE.		NEGATIVE.	
Mittam,	<i>let me send.</i>	Nē mittam,	<i>let me not send.</i>
Mittās,	} <i>send.</i>	Nē mittās,	} <i>do not send.</i>
Mīseris,		Nē mīseris,	
Mitte,	} <i>let him send.</i>	Nōlī mittere,	} <i>let him not send.</i>
Mittat,		Nē mittat,	
Mīserit,		Nē mīserit,	

a. Diagram the usage in the plural in the same way. Commands and Appeals.

b. Observe that both **imperative** and **subjunctive** forms are used.

c. Observe that the **negative** is **nē**.

d. The **imperative** of **nōlō** (**nōlī**, **nōlīte**) with the **infinitive** is frequently used.

447. RULE.—**Commands** are put in the **imperative** or **subjunctive**; **appeals** in the **subjunctive**. The negative is **nē**.

## 448.

## EXAMPLES.

Cum vīs, venī, *When you wish, come.*

Dīcit cum velīs veniās, *He says that you may come when you wish.*

Dīxit cum vellēs venīrēs, *He said that you could come when you wished.*

Nē moneat, *Let him not advise.*

Dīcit nē moneat, *He says that he may not advise.*

Dīxit nē monēret, *He said that he should not advise.*

Indirect Discourse:  
Commands and  
Appeals.

*a.* Notice that after a verb denoting mental action the **imperative** *venī* in the first sentence is changed to the **subjunctive**, and the **subjunctive** *moneat* in the fourth remains a **subjunctive**.

*b.* Observe that the rule for Sequence of Tenses (411) is followed.

**449. RULE.**—In Indirect Discourse the subjunctive of Appeals and Commands remains a Subjunctive.

The Imperative is in Indirect Discourse changed to the Subjunctive.

**450.** The three forms of Indirect Discourse have now all been studied :

**Indirect Statements** (413) take the **Infinitive** with **Subject Accusative** and the **Subjunctive** in **Subordinate Clauses**.

The Three Forms  
of Indirect Dis-  
course.

**Indirect Questions** (438) take the **Subjunctive**.

**Indirect Commands** (449) take the **Subjunctive**.

The **Subjunctives** throughout conform to the rule for the Sequence of Tenses (411).

**451.**

I.

Ariovistō Caesar nūntium mīsit : “ Haec sunt, quae ā tē postulō : primum, nē hominum multitudinem trāns Rhēnum flūmen trādūcās, deinde, obsidēs red-īre per-mittās, atque nē Haeduis bellum inferās.”

Ariovistus respondit ; “ Cum Haedui superātī sint, obsidēs red-īre nōn per-mittam. Cum vīs, venī ; cōgnōscēs quid Germānī virtūte possint.”

Caesar cum exercitū vēnit et in conloquiō Ariovistō dixit ; “ Nē Haeduis bellum in-fer ; obsidēs red-īre per-mitte ; plūrēs Germānōs trāns Rhēnum nē trā-dūcītō.” Ariovistus respondit ; “ Quid mihi vīs ? cūr in meās possessiōnēs vēnistī ? Sī tē interfecerō, multis principibus populi Rōmānī grātum erit.”

Hoc conloquiō habitō Ariovistus per lēgātōs dixit ; “ Conloquendī finem nē fēceris, sed aut aliquem conloquiō diem cōstitueris aut ex tuis aliquem ad mē mīseris.”

Duōs lēgātōs Caesar mīsit, quōs cum Ariovistus vīdisset, conclāmāvit, “ Cūr ad mē veniunt ? ” atque eōs hostium in numerō habuit.

## II.

Caesar nūntiāvit haec esse quae postulāvit ; nē multitudinem in Galliam Ariovistus trādūceret, obsidēs red-īre permitteret, nē Haeduīs bellum īn-ferret.

Ariovistus respondit sē obsidēs nōn red-īre permittūrum esse ; cum Caesar vellet, veniret.

Caesar in conloquiō postulāvit nē bellum Haeduīs Ariovistus īn-ferret ; obsidēs red-īre per-mitteret, plūrēs Germānōs trāns Rhēnum nē trādūceret.

Ariovistus quaesivit quid Caesar vellet, et dixit si eum interfēcisset id multis Rōmānīs grātum futūrum esse.

### 452.

1. The Germans ask why the Romans are demanding that they shall not take hostages from those states of Gaul which they have conquered. They ask why the Romans have come into that part of Gaul which they, and not the former, have conquered. Do the Romans wish to wage war with them? (they ask). If they do, they say, let them come: war is always<sup>1</sup> pleasing to the Germans.

2. They wish me to ask you what you want.

3. You may come if you wish, but do not talk with me.

4. Come to me some other day, since I am unable to give you anything to-day.<sup>2</sup>

5. I demand that you do not come to the camp if the legate be unwilling.

<sup>1</sup> semper.

<sup>2</sup> hodiē.

## LESSON LXXVIII.

**453. The First (or Active) Periphrastic<sup>1</sup> Conjugation** is formed by combining the **future active participle** with the tenses of the verb **sum**. First Periphrastic Conjugation.

**Tē monitūrus erat,** *He was about to (going to, intending to) advise you.*

**Tē missūrus erit,** *He will be about to send you.*

a. What form of this conjugation has already been used freely?

**454. The Second (or Passive) Periphrastic<sup>1</sup> Conjugation** is of frequent occurrence. It is somewhat puzzling, because it scarcely admits of a literal translation into English. It is used frequently by Caesar and other Latin writers. Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

It is formed by combining the **Gerundive** with the tenses of the verb **sum**.

The **Second** Periphrastic Conjugation is **Passive** and denotes a **necessity** or **duty**.

**Mittendus sum,** *I am to be (must be, ought to be, deserve to be) sent.*

**Mittendus eram,** *I was to be (should have been, ought to have been, deserve to have been) sent.*

**Mittendus erō,** *I shall have to be sent.*

**455. RULE.**—The **gerundive** is used with the verb **sum** to form the **passive (or second) periphrastic conjugation**, denoting **obligation** or **duty**.

**456.** Another peculiarity of this Conjugation is that it uses a **dative** to denote the **doer** or agent, where the ordinary conjugations use the ablative of **agent**. Dative of Agent.

<sup>1</sup> The adjective “periphrastic” and noun “periphrasis” are derived from the Greek. The corresponding Latin derivative is “circumlocution (**circum, loquor**). “Periphrasis” means “a roundabout method of expression.”

**Tibi mittendus sum**, *I must be sent by you.*

**Caesarī omnia agenda sunt**, *Everything had to be done by Caesar.*

RULE.—The **agent** with the **gerundive** is expressed by the **dative**.

**457.** The **Impersonal** construction is frequent with this conjugation.

Impersonal means having **no personal** subject. The **clause** is sometimes considered the **subject**.

**Ad urbem exercituī veniendum est**, *The army must come to the city (the necessity of coming to the city is to the army).*

**Mihi pūgnandum est**, *I must fight (the necessity of fighting is to me).*

#### 458.

1. Tibi exercitus dūcendus est.
2. Ad montem proximum legiōnibus veniendum est.
3. Hīs cōgnitis Labiēnus existimāvit sibi contendendum est.
4. Ācriter Galli pūgnāvērunt.
5. Ācriter ā Gallīs pūgnātum est.
6. Ācriter Gallis pūgnandum est.
7. Cum ā hostibus premēbāmur, tamen nōbīs castra ponenda erant.
8. Galbae cum reliquīs cōpiīs proficiscendum est.
9. Duābus legiōnibus atque impedimentīs tōtius exercitūs relictis ad Bōiōs veniendum est.
10. Galba cum peditibus ad castra mittendus fuit.
11. Frūmenti inopiā oppidum in deditiōnem Caesarī dandum est.
12. Illud mihi nōn dīcendum est.
13. In idōneō locō lēgātō castra ponenda sunt.
14. Eī illius gladius capiendus erat.
15. In Gallōs Rōmānis impetus faciendus est.



16. Caesar existimāvit hostium castra sibi oppugnanda esse.

17. Praesidiō in castrīs relictō omnēs cōpiās ad aquam dūcendae fuērunt.

18. Omnia bene mihi gerenda sunt.

19. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant facienda ; ab opere re-vocandī militēs, aciēs instruenda, signum tubā dandum.

20. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar existimāvit cōnsilium sibi capiendum esse ex locī naturā. Erant circum castra Pompēi per-multī collēs. Hōc primum praesidiīs tenendōs esse cōstituit. Pompēius quoque cōstituit sibi quam plūrimōs collis quam māximō circuitū occupandōs esse, ut multa eā causā proelia fierent.

21. Cum complūrēs barbarī populō Rōmānō bellum inferant, tamen superābuntur.

22. Labiēnus, cum hunc locum occupāvisset, māgnū hostibus terrōrem in-tulit.

#### 459.

1. You must hurry.

2. The Germans must be kept out of Gaul by the Romans.

3. He said that the river had to be crossed.<sup>1</sup>

4. He asked what you were going to do.

5. We must go to the city. He asks why<sup>2</sup> we must go.

6. The legate thought that he ought to send a legion to hold the mountain, since the Gauls were about to attack with large forces.

7. The town must be defended by the soldiers, although one of the two legates is wounded.

8. The signal of battle must be given.

9. If you must make the attack, fight very bravely.

10. He says that we must attack all of the winter camps of the Romans upon the same day.

<sup>1</sup> trāns-eō.

<sup>2</sup> cūr.

READING LESSONS.

**460.** THE DYING STANDARD BEARER.

In proeliō cum graviter aquilifer vulnerātus esset, vidēns equitēs nostrōs “Hanc aquilam ego” dixit, “et vīvus miltōs per annōs māgnā diligentīā dēfendī et nunc moriēns eādem fide ad Caesarem mittō. Nōlite committere quod ante in exercitū Caesaris nōn accidit incolumemque ad eum dēferte.”

Ita aquila servātur, omnibus primae cohortis centuriōnibus interfectis praeter principem priorem.

**461.** DYING FOR HIS MEN.

Mārcus Petrōnius octāvae legiōnis centuriō, cum portās oppidī Gallōrum excidere cōnātus esset, ā multitudīne Gallōrum superātus ac iam vulnerātus militibus suis quī illum secūtī erant “Quoniam” dixit “mē vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae certē vitae providēbō, quōs spē glōriae adductus in periculum dūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbis providēte.”

Haec locūtus in hostēs contendit duōbusque interfectis reliquōs ā portā paulum summōvit. Cōnantibus auxilium dare suis “Frūstrā” dixit “meae vitae subvenire cōnāmini, quī iam gravius vulnerātus sum. Ab-ite dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.” Ita pūgnāns suis salūtī fuit et post paulum interfectus est.

**462.** The three selections which follow relate incidents which occurred during Caesar's campaign in Africa. The partisans of the Senate collected in this province after the battle of Pharsalia (245), where Varus and king Juba, who had defeated Curio (361), were still unsubdued. Since Pompey was dead (255) Scipio was declared by them to be the only real “imperator”, or general-in-chief of the Roman government.

**463.**

## IS CAESAR AN IMPERATOR?

Plancus Caesaris lēgātus petit ab eō ut sibi darētur facultās cum Cōnsidiō agendī, sī posset perdūcī ad sānitātem. Itaque, datā facultāte, litterās captivō dat perferendās in oppidum ad Cōnsidium. Ad quem cum captivus pervēnisset, litterāsque Cōnsidiō dabat; prius quam acciperet ille “*Ā quō*”, dīxit, “*illās?*” Tum captivus, “*Ab imperātōre Caesare*” Tum Cōnsidius, “*Ūnus est*”, dīxit, “*Scīpiō imperātor hōc tempore populī Rōmānī.*” Deinde in cōspectū suō imperāvit ut captivus statim interficerētur, litterāsque dedit hominī certō quī eās ad Scīpiōnem perferret.

**464.**

## LABIENUS MEETS HIS MATCH.

Labienus, during Caesar's wars in Gaul, had been long commander of Caesar's most trusted legion, the tenth. He here appears fighting against his former soldiers (cp. 185).

Labiēnus in equō capite nūdō in primā aciē pūgnābat, et nōnnumquam legiōnāriōs Caesaris appellābat: “*Quid tū*”, dīxit, “*mīles tīrō, tam ferōculus es?*” Tum mīles, “*Nōn sum*”, dīxit, “*tīrō, Labiēne, sed dē legiōne decimā veterānus.*” Tum Labiēnus, “*Nōn āgnōscō*”, dīxit, “*signa decumānōrum.*” Tum mīles, “*Iam mē, quis sim, cōgnōscās*”, et statim cassidem dē capite dē-iēcit, ut cōgnōscī ab eō posset, atque statim tēlum in Labiēnum mittere contendit. Equō vulnerātō, dīxit, “*Labiēne, decumānum militem, quī tē petit, cōgnōsce esse.*”

**465.**

## FAITHFUL UNTIL DEATH.

Ex classe quam ā Siciliā ad Caesarem miserat Alliēnus, nāvis ūna, in quā fuerat Cominius et Ticide, eques Rōmānus, tempestāte Thapsum delāta, excepta est et ad Scīpiōnem dēducta. Item altera nāvis ex eādē classe tempestāte ad Aeginūrum delāta ā classe Vārī et Octāvī est capta, in quā milītēs veterānī cum ūnō centuriōne et nōn-nūllī tīrōnēs fuē-

runt ; quōs Vārus, servātōs, mīsit ad Scīpiōnem. Quī postquam ad eum pervēnērunt, “ Nōn vestrā ”, dixit, “ sponte vōs, sciō, sed illius vestri imperātōris imperiō coāctōs esse cum nōbīs optimīs pūgnāre. Quōs quoniam fortūna in nostram dētulit potestātem, sī rem publicam cum optimō quoque dēfendētis, vōbīs vitam et praemia dabimus.”

Postquam ita dixerat Scīpiō, cum existimāvisset prō suō beneficiō ab iīs grātiās sibi āctum irī, potestātem iīs dīcendī fēcit. Ex eīs centuriō legiōnis quartae decimae “ Prō tuō ”, dīxit, “ summō beneficiō, Scīpiō, tibi grātiās agō (nōn nam imperātōrem tē appellō) quod mihi vitam captivō polliceris ; et forsitan istō ūterer beneficiō, sī nōn eī summum scelus adiungerētur. Egone contrā Caesarem, imperātōrem meum, eiūsq̄ exercitum, prō cūius victōriā amplius sex et trīgintā annīs pūgnāvī, armātus cōsistam ? Nōn ego istud factūrus sum. Contrā cūius cōpiās contendis, nunc cōgnōsce. Cohortem ūnam, quae est tuārum firmissima, cōstitue contrā mē ; ego autem ex hīs militibus quōs nunc in tuā tenēs potestāte, nōn amplius decem summam ; tum ex virtūte nostrā cognōscēs quid ā tuīs cōpiīs contrā illum agī possit.”

Postquam haec centuriō est locūtus, Scīpiō, incēnsus, annuit centuriōnibus quid fierī vellet, atque ante pedēs centuriōnem interfēcit. Ut veterānī ā tirōnibus secernerentur imperāvit. “ Abdūcite ”, dixit, “ istōs scelere affectōs ! ” Ita extrā vallum dēductī sunt et interfectī.

#### 466. AN INCIDENT AT THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA.

Erat Crastīnus in exercitū Caesaris, quī superiōre annō apud eum prīmum pīlum in legiōne decimā dūxerat, vir māgnā virtūte. Hīc, signō datō, “ Sequiminī me ”, dixit, “ manipulārēs meī quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōre, quam cōstituis-tis, operam date. Ūnum hōc proelium super-est, quō cōfectō et ille suam dignitātem et nōs libertātem recuperābimus.” Simul vidēns Caesarem, “ Faciam ”, dixit, “ hodiē, imperātōr, ut aut vivō aut mortuō grātiās agās.” . . .



In eō proeliō interfectus est etiam fortissimē pūgnāns Crastinus, cūius mentiōnem suprā fēcimus. Neque id fuit falsum, quod ille in pūgnam proficiscēns dixerat. Ita enim Caesar existimābat, eō proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crastinī fuisse.

## 467.

## PŪGNA PHARSALICA.

The battle of Pharsalia has already been briefly described (245). After Caesar had succeeded in bringing his whole army over from Italy as already described (170) he attempted to shut Pompey in at Dyrrhachium by surrounding his army with entrenchments. In this attempt he was disastrously defeated by Pompey.<sup>1</sup> He retreated rapidly into Thessaly, pursued by Pompey, who was joined by Scipio with reinforcements. It seemed to followers of the latter that success was now certain, and they could not understand why he was reluctant to risk another battle with Caesar's veterans.

Pompēius paucis post diēbus in Thessaliam pervēnit, atque apud tōtum exercitum suis agit grātiās, receptisque omnibus Scipiōnis legiōnibus spēs victōriā augētur. Inter sē dē prae-miis principēs eius exercitūs contendēbant; alii domōs bonaeque eōrum qui in castris erant Caesaris petēbant.

Rē frūmentāriā parātā cōfirmātisque militibus et satis longē spatiō temporis ā superiōribus proeliis intermissō temptandum esse Caesar existimāvit quid Pompēius studi pūgnandi habēret. Itaque ex castris exercitum edūxit aciemque instrūxit, sed primō suis locis paulōque ā castris Pompēi longius.

Pompēius, qui castra in colle habēbat, ad infimās partēs montis aciem instruēbat, semper expectāns si iniquis locis Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar nullā ratiōne ad pūgnam ēlici posse Pompēium existimāns hanc sibi commodissimam bellī ratiōnem iūdicāvit, ut castra ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec expectāns, ut movendīs castris plūribusque adeundis locis commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur et

<sup>1</sup> An incident of this battle is related in 460.



in itinere ut aliquam occâsiônem pūgnandī reperīret. His cōstitutīs rēbus signō iam datō visum est paulō longius ā vallō aciem Pompēi iisse, ut nōn inīquō locō posse pūgnārī vidērētur. Tum Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portis, “Differendum est,” dīxit, “iter nōbīs, et dē proeliō cōgitandum est, quod semper volumus. Sīmus ad pūgnandum parātī; nōn facile occâsiōnem postea reperīemus.”

Pompēius quoque cōstituerat pūgnāre. Etiam in conciliō superiōribus diēbus dīxerat, “Sciō mē paene incrēdibilem rem pollicērī, sed ratiōnem cōsili mei accipite. Persuā ī equitibus nostrīs, idque mihi factūrōs esse cōfirmāvērunt, ut, cum propius agmina issent dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō oppūgnārent et aciē circumventā prius perturbātum eius exercitum pellerent quam a nōbīs tēlum in hostem iacerētur.” Labiēnus quoque, “Nōlī”, dīxit, exīstimāre, hunc esse exercitum quī Galliam Germāniamque superāvit. Omnibus interfui proeliīs. Perexigua pars illius exercitūs superest; māgna pars interiit. “Haec cum dīxisset iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn rūsus itūrum esse. Pompēius idem iūrāvit, nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam quī iūrāre dubitāvit. Haec cum facta sunt in conciliō māgna spēs iīs fuit, quod Pompēiō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōfirmārī vidēbātur.

Caesar, cum ad Pompēi castra prope vēnisset, aciem eius instructam ita vidit. Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae quārum ūna prima, altera tertia, appellābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syriacīs tenēbat. Cilicēnsis legiō cum cohortibus Hispānīs in dextrō cornū erant conlocātae. Hās firmissimās sē habēre Pompēius exīstimābat. Reliquae inter aciem mediam cornuaque erant conlocātae. Numerō cohortēs erant centum et decem. Haec erant mīlia quadrāgintā quinque. Reliquās cohortēs septem in castrīs castellisque praesidiō posuerat. In dextrō cornū eius erat rivus quīdam, quā causā omnem equitātum cum sagittāriīs funditōribusque sinistrō cornū posuerat.

Caesar decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō, conlocāverat, et huic sīc adiungit octāvam ut paene ūnam

ex duābus efficeret, atque imperāvit ut altera alterī praesidiō esset. Cohortēs in aciē octāgintā cōstitutās habēbat, quae summa erat milium duo et viginti. Cohortēs duās castris praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō Sullam, mediae aciēi Domitium praeposuit. Ipse contrā Pompēium cōstitit. Aciē Pompēi visā, timēns nē ā multitudīne equitum dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex cohortibus tertiae aciēi quartam instituit equitātūque opposuit et quid fieri vellet nūntiāvit monuitque eius diēi victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōstāre. Tertiae aciēi tōtīque exercitūi imperāvit nē concurreret nisi ipse imperāret ; sē, cum id fieri vellet, signum datūrum esse.

Hīs cōstitutis signum dedit. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatī ut satis esset ad cursum utriusque exercitūs. Sed Pompēius suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent neve sē locō movērent, ut duplicatō cursū Caesaris milites essent defessi. Sed nostri milites datō signō cum prōcucurrissent atque vidissent nōn concurrī ā militibus Pompēi, usū peritī suā sponte ad medium paene spatium cōstitērunt, parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō rursus cucurrerunt et statim tela miserunt. Neque verō milites Pompēi huic rei defuerunt. Et tela missa excēperunt et impetum legiōnum tulerunt et telis missis ad gladiōs redierunt.

Eodem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēi cornū prōcucurrerunt. Quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, equitēsque Pompēi, hōc ācriōrēs, aciem nostram ā latere apertō circumībant. Quod cum Caesar cōgnōvisset quartae aciēi quam instituerat sex cohortium dedit signum. Illi celeriter prōcucurrerunt et in Pompēi equitēs tam ācriter impetum fecerunt ut eōrum nēmō cōstāret, atque nōn solum locō pellerentur sed fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus pulsīs omnēs sagittārii funditōrēsque sine praesidiō interfecti sunt. Eodem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū pūgnantibus etiam tum in aciē Pompēi circumiērunt.

Eodem tempore tertiae aciēi, quae sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, Caesar imperāvit ut prōcurreret. Ita ex duābus

partibus eodem tempore aciēs Pompēi oppugnābātur. Milites eius eā causā impetum sustinere nōn potuerunt, sed omnes fugerunt atque ad castra contendērunt.

Caesar, nūllum spatium perterritis dandum esse existimāns, suis militibus imperāvit ut castra oppugnārent. Castra ā cohortibus quae praesidiō erant relictāe ācriter dēfendēbantur ; multō etiam ācrius ā Thracibus barbarisque auxiliis. Neque vērō diūtius quā in vallō cōstitērant multitudinem tēlorum sustinere potuerunt, sed multis vulnerātis locum reliquerunt et omnes ducibus usque centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum in altissimōs montēs quī ad castra pertinēbant fugerunt. Proximā diē in dēditionem Caesarī sē dedērunt.

In hōc proeliō nōn amplius ducentōs milites, sed centuriōnēs circiter trigintā, Caesar amisit. Ex Pompēi exercitū circiter milia quīndecim interfecta esse vidēbantur, sed in dēditionem vērunt milia vīginti quattuor ; multī praetereā fugerunt ; signaque ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta centum et octōgintā et aquilae novem.

FINIS.

# TABLES OF DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.

## NOUNS.

### 468. FIRST DECLENSION.—A STEMS.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
FEMININE.			
N.	silva	N.	silvae
G.	silvae	G.	silvārum
D.	silvae	D.	silvīs
Ac.	silvam	Ac.	silvās
AB.	silvā	AB.	silvīs
V.	(silva)	V.	(silvae)

### 469. SECOND DECLENSION.—O STEMS.

SINGULAR.				
M.	N.	M.	M.	N.
N. mūrus	oppidum	vir	ager	cōnsilium
G. mūrī	oppidī	virī	agrī	cōnsilī
D. mūrō	oppidō	virō	agrō	cōnsiliō
Ac. mūrum	oppidum	virum	agrum	cōnsilium
AB. mūrō	oppidō	virō	agrō	cōnsiliō
V. (mūre)	(oppidum)	(vir)	(ager)	(cōnsilium)
PLURAL.				
N. mūrī	oppida	virī	agrī	cōnsilia
G. mūrōrum	oppidōrum	virōrum	agrōrum	cōnsiliōrum
D. mūrīs	oppidīs	virīs	agrīs	cōnsiliīs
Ac. mūrōs	oppida	virōs	agrōs	cōnsilia
AB. mūrīs	oppidīs	virīs	agrīs	cōnsiliīs
V. (mūrī)	(oppida)	(virī)	(agrī)	(cōnsilia)

470.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## MUTE STEMS.

## SINGULAR.

	M.	M.	N.
N.	princeps	rēx	caput
G.	principis	rēgis	capitis
D.	principi	rēgi	capiti
Ac.	principem	rēgem	caput
AB.	principe	rēge	capite
V.	(princeps)	(rēx)	(caput)

## PLURAL.

N.	principēs	rēgēs	capita
G.	principum	rēgum	capitum
D.	principibus	rēgibus	capitibus
Ac.	principēs	rēgēs	capita
AB.	principibus	rēgibus	capitibus
V.	(principēs)	(rēgēs)	(capita)

## LIQUID STEMS.

## SINGULAR.

	M.	M. & F.	N.
N.	cōsul	homō	litus
G.	cōsulis	hominis	litoris
D.	cōsulī	hominī	litori
Ac.	cōsulem	hominem	litus
AB.	cōsule	homine	litore
V.	(cōsul)	(homō)	(litus)

## PLURAL.

N.	cōsulēs	hominēs	litora
G.	cōsulum	hominum	litorum
D.	cōsulibus	hominibus	litoribus
Ac.	cōsulēs	hominēs	litora
AB.	cōsulibus	hominibus	litoribus
V.	(cōsulēs)	(hominēs)	(litora)



STEMS IN *i*.

## SINGULAR.

	M. & F.	F.	F.	N.
N.	hostis	nūbēs	urbs	animal
G.	hostis	nūbis	urbis	animālis
D.	hostī	nūbī	urbī	animālī
Ac.	hostem	nūbem	urbem	animal
AB.	hoste	nūbe	urbe	animālī
V.	(hostis)	(nūbēs)	(urbs)	(animal)

## PLURAL.

N.	hostēs	nūbēs	urbēs	animālia
G.	hostium	nūbium	urbium	animālium
D.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus
Ac.	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	animālia
AB.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus
V.	(hostēs)	(nūbēs)	(urbēs)	(animālia)

## 471. FOURTH DECLENSION.—U STEMS.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

	M.	N.		M.	N.
N.	cursus	cornū	N.	cursūs	cornua
G.	cursūs	cornūs	G.	cursum	cornuum
D.	cursuī, -ū	cornū	D.	cursibus	cornibus
Ac.	cursum	cornū	Ac.	cursūs	cornua
AB.	cursū	cornū	AB.	cursibus	cornibus
V.	(cursus)	(cornū)	V.	(cursūs)	(cornua)

## 472.

## Domus, F.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

N.	domus	N.	domūs
G.	domūs, domī	G.	domuum, domōrum
D.	domuī, domō	D.	domibus
Ac.	domum	Ac.	domūs, domōs
AB.	domū, domō	AB.	domibus
V.	(domus)	V.	(domūs)

## 473. FIFTH DECLENSION.—E STEMS.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

## MASC. &amp; FEM.

N. diēs  
 G. diēī  
 D. diēī  
 Ac. diem  
 Ab. diē  
 V. (diēs)

N. diēs  
 G. diērum  
 D. diēbus  
 Ac. diēs  
 Ab. diēbus  
 V. (diēs)

## ADJECTIVES.

## 474. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

## SINGULAR.

## MASCULINE.

## FEMININE.

## NEUTER.

N. bonus	bona	bonum
G. bonī	bonae	bonī
D. bonō	bonae	bonō
Ac. bonum	bonam	bonum
Ab. bonō	bonā	bonō
V. (bonus)	(bona)	(bonum)

## PLURAL.

N. bonī	bonae	bona
G. bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D. bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac. bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab. bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
V. (bonī)	(bonae)	(bona)

## SINGULAR.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. liber	libera	liberum
G. liberī	liberae	liberī
D. liberō	liberae	liberō
Ac. liberum	liberam	liberum
AB. liberō	liberā	liberō
V. (liber)	(libera)	(liberum)

## PLURAL.

N. liberī	liberae	libera
G. liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
D. liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
Ac. liberōs	liberās	libera
AB. liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
V. (liberī)	(liberae)	(libera)

## 475.

## I. THIRD DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N. ācer	ācrīs	ācre	N. ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G. ācrīs	ācrīs	ācrīs	G. ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	D. ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac. ācrem	ācrem	ācre	Ac. ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
AB. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	AB. ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
V. (ācer)	(ācrīs)	(ācre)	V. (ācrēs)	(ācrēs)	(ācria)

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. facilis	facile	N. facilēs	facilia
G. facilis	facilis	G. facilitum	facilitum
D. facilī	facilī	D. facilitibus	facilitibus
Ac. facilem	facile	Ac. facilīs, -ēs	facilia
AB. facilī	facilī	AB. facilitibus	facilitibus
V. (facilis)	(facile)	V. (facilēs)	(facilia)

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. audāx	audāx	N. audācēs	audācia
G. audācis	audācis	G. audācium	audācium
D. audācī	audācī	D. audācibus	audācibus
Ac. audācem	audāx	Ac. audācīs, -ēs	audācia
Ab. audācī, -e	audācī, -e	Ab. audācibus	audācibus
V. (audāx)	(audāx)	V. (audācēs)	(audācia)

## 2. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. altior	altius	N. altiōrēs	altiōra
G. altiōris	altiōris	G. altiōrum	altiōrum
D. altiōrī	altiōrī	D. altiōribus	altiōribus
Ac. altiōrem	altius	Ac. altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra
Ab. altiōre, -ī	altiōre, -ī	Ab. altiōribus	altiōribus
V. (altior)	(altior)	V. (altiōrēs)	(altiōra)

## 3. DECLENSION OF PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. amāns	amāns	N. amantēs	amantia
G. amantis	amantis	G. amantium	amantium
D. amanti	amanti	D. amantibus	amantibus
Ac. amantem	amantem	Ac. amantēs	amantia
Ab. amante, -ī	amante, -ī	Ab. amantibus	amantibus
V. (amāns)	(amāns)	V. (amantēs)	(amantia)

## PRONOUNS.

476.

## DEMONSTRATIVE.

## SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>
G.	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>
D.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>
Ac.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>
AB.	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hac</i>	<i>hoc</i>

## PLURAL.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>hi</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
G.	<i>horum</i>	<i>harum</i>	<i>horum</i>
D.	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
Ac.	<i>hos</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>haec</i>
AB.	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>

## SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
G.	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
D.	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>
Ac.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
AB.	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>

## PLURAL.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
G.	<i>illorum</i>	<i>illarum</i>	<i>illorum</i>
D.	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
Ac.	<i>illos</i>	<i>illas</i>	<i>illa</i>
AB.	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>
G.	<i>eiūs</i>	<i>eiūs</i>	<i>eiūs</i>
D.	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>
Ac.	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>
AB.	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>

	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
G.	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
D.	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
Ac.	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
AB.	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>iste</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i>
G.	<i>istiūs</i>	<i>istiūs</i>	<i>istiūs</i>
D.	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>
Ac.	<i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>
AB.	<i>istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>

	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i>
G.	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>
D.	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>
Ac.	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>
AB.	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>



	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.	idem	eadem	idem	{	eīdem	eaedem	e'adem
					iīdem		
G.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
					iīsdem	iīsdem	iīsdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem		eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
					iīsdem	iīsdem	iīsdem

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	N.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	G.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	D.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ac.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	Ab.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

## 477.

## RELATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quī	quae	quod	N. quī	quae	quae
G. cūius	cūius	cūius	G. quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. cuī	cuī	cuī	D. quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac. quem	quam	quod	Ac. quōs	quās	quae
Ab. quō	quā	quō	Ab. quibus	quibus	quibus

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.				
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.	quis	quae	quid	N.	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	G.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cūī	cui	cūī	D.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	Ac.	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	Ab.	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 478.

## I. PERSONAL.

SINGULAR.		
N.	ego	tū
G.	meī	tuī
D.	mihi	tibi
Ac.	mē	tē
Ab.	mē	tē

	PLURAL.	(SINGULAR AND PLURAL ALIKE.)
N. nōs	vōs	—
G. nostrūm, -trī	vestrūm, -trī	sui
D. nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Ac. nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
Ab. nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

## 2. INDEFINITE.

## SINGULAR.

N. aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
G. alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
D. alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
Ac. aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
Ab. aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

## PLURAL.

N. aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
G. aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac. aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

## SINGULAR.

N. quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
G. cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
D. cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
Ac. quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
Ab. quōdam	quādam	quōdam

## PLURAL.

N. quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G. quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D. quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac. quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Ab. quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

## 479.

## NUMERALS.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	ûnus	ûna	ûnum		N. milia
G.	ûnîus	ûnîus	ûnîus	mille,	G. milium
D.	ûnī	ûnī	ûnī	indeclinable.	D. milibus
Ac.	ûnum	ûnam	ûnum		Ac. milia
AB.	ûnō	ûnā	ûnō		AB. milibus

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
AB.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

## CARDINALS.

1. ûnus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo
3. trēs, tria
4. quattuor
5. quîque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. ûndecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quîndecim
16. sêdecim, *or* sexdecim
17. septendecim
18. duodêvigintî
19. ûndêvigintî

## ORDINALS.

- 1st. primus, -a, -um
- 2d. secundus (*or* alter)
- 3d. tertius, -a, -um
- 4th. quartus, etc.
- 5th. quîntus
- 6th. sextus
- 7th. septimus
- 8th. octāvus
- 9th. nōnus
- 10th. decimus
- 11th. ûndecimus
- 12th. duodecimus
- 13th. tertius decimus
- 14th. quartus decimus
- 15th. quîntus decimus
- 16th. sextus decimus
- 17th. septimus decimus
- 18th. duodêvicêsimus
- 19th. ûndêvicêsimus

20. vīgintī	20th. vicēsīmus
21. { vīgintī ūnus, <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī	21st. { vicēsīmus primus, <i>or</i> ūnus et vicēsīmus
22. vīgintī duo <i>or</i> duo et vīgintī	22d. vicēsīmus secundus, <i>or</i> alter et vicēsīmus
28. duodētrīgintā	28th. duodētricēsīmus
29. ūndētrīgintā	29th. ūndētricēsīmus
30. trīgintā	30th. tricēsīmus
40. quadrāgintā	40th. quadrāgēsīmus
50. quīnquāgintā	50th. quīnquāgēsīmus
60. sexāgintā	60th. sexāgēsīmus
70. septuāgintā	70th. septuāgēsīmus
80. octōgintā	80th. octōgēsīmus
90. nōnāgintā	90th. nōnāgēsīmus
100. centum	100th. centēsīmus
101. centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus	200th. ducentēsīmus
102. centum duo <i>or</i> centum et duo	1000th. millēsīmus
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	800. octingentī, -ae, -a
300. trecentī, -ae, -a	900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
400. quadringentī, -ae, a	1,000. mille
500. quīngentī, -ae, -a	2,000. duo mīlia
600. sēscentī, -ae, -a	10,000. decem mīlia
700. septingentī, -ae, -a	100,000. centum mīlia

## REGULAR VERBS.

480.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts: **Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.**Stem: **amā-**.

INDICATIVE.

**Active Voice.****Passive Voice.**

PRESENT TENSE.

PRESENT TENSE.

*I love, am loving, do love.**I am loved.*

SINGULAR.

SINGULAR.

amō, *I love.*amor, *I am loved.*amās, *Thou lovest.*amāris, *Thou art loved.*amat, *He loves.*amātur, *He is loved.*

PLURAL.

PLURAL.

amāmus, *We love.*amāmur, *We are loved.*amātis, *You love.*amāminī, *You are loved.*amant, *They love.*amantur, *They are loved.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

*I loved, was loving, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

amābam amābāmus

amābar amābāmur

amābās amābātis

amābāris or -re amābamini

amābat amābant

amābātur amābantur

FUTURE TENSE.

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

amābō amābimus

amābor amābimur

amābis amābitis

amāberis or -re amābimini

amābit amābunt

amābitur amābuntur

PERFECT TENSE.

*I have loved, I loved, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amāvī amāvimus

amāvistī amāvistis

amāvit amāvērunt or -re

amātus,	{	sum	{	sumus
-a, -um		es		estis
		est		sunt



## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus, -a, -um	{	eram	amātī,	{	erāmus
amāverās	amāverātis			erās	-ae, -a		erātis
amāverat	amāverant			erat			erant

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāverō	amāverimus	amātus, -a, -um	{	erō	amāti,	{	erimus
amāveris	amāveritis			eris	-ae, -a		eritis
amāverit	amāverint			erit			erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris or -re	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

## IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris or -re	amārēminī
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

## PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus, -a, -um	{	sim	amātī,	{	sīmus
amāveris	amāveritis			sīs	-ae, -a		sītis
amāverit	amāverint			sit			sint

## PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus, -a, -um	{	essem	amātī,	{	essēmus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis			essēs	-ae, -a		essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent			esset			essent

## Active Voice.

## Passive Voice.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*amāre, *be thou loved.*amāte, *love ye.*amāminī, *be ye loved.*

## FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.*amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*amātō, *he shall love.*amātor, *he shall be loved.*amātōte, *you shall love.*amantō, *they shall love.*amāntor, *they shall be loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. amāre, *to love.*amārī, *to be loved.*PERF. amāvisse, *to have loved.* amātum (-am, -um) esse, *to have been loved.*FUT. amātūrum (-am, -um) amātum irī, *to be about to be esse, to be about to love.*

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving.* PERF. amātus, -a, -um, *having*FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.* *been loved.*

## GERUND.

## GERUNDIVE.

G. amand, *of loving.*

amandus, -a, -um.

D. amandō, *for loving.*AC. amandum, *loving.*AB. amandō, *by loving.*

## SUPINE.

AC. amātum, *to love.*AB. amātū, *to love.*

## CONJUGATION BY ENDINGS.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Active Voice.

## Passive Voice.

## PRESENT TENSE.

am-ō	am-ā-mus	am-o-r	am-ā-mur
“ -ā-s	“ “ -tis	“ -ā-ris	“ “ -mini
“ a-t	“ a-nt	“ “ -tur	“ a-ntur

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ā-ba-m	am-ā-bā-mus	am-ā-ba-r	am-ā-bā-mur
“ “ bā-s	“ “ “ -tis	“ “ bā-ris <i>or re</i>	“ “ “ -mini
“ “ ba-t	“ “ ba-nt	“ “ “ -tur	“ “ ba-ntur

## FUTURE TENSE.

am-ā-b-ō	am-ā-bi-mus	am-ā-bo-r	am-ā-bi-mur
“ “ -bi-s	“ “ “ -tis	“ “ -be-ris <i>or re</i>	“ “ “ -mini
“ “ “ -t	“ “ bu-nt	“ “ -bi-tur	“ “ -bu-ntur

## PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-ī	amāv-imus	amātus, { sum	amātī, { sumus
“ -istī	“ -istis	es	estis
“ -it	“ -ērunt <sup>1</sup>	-a, -um { est	-ae, -a { sunt

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāv-era-m	amāv-erā-mus	amātus, { eram	amātī, { erāmus
“ erā-s	“ “ -tis	erās	erātis
“ era-t	“ era-nt	-a, -um { erat	-ae, -a { erant

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-er-ō	amāv-eri-mus	amātus, { erō	amātī, { erimus
“ -erī-s	“ “ -tis	eris	eritis
“ “ -t	“ “ -nt	-a, -um { erit	-ae, -a { erunt

<sup>1</sup> Or amāv-ēre.

481. SECOND CONJUGATION.—**Ē** VERBS.**moneō** *advise.*Principal Parts : **moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus**.

## INDICATIVE.

## Active.

## Passive.

## PRESENT.

*I advise, etc.**I am advised, etc.*

moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris	monēmini
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris or -re	monēbāmini
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis or -re	monēbimini
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

## PERFECT.

*I have advised, I advised, etc. I have been (was) advised, etc.*

monuī	monuimus	monitus, { -a, -um {	sum	monitī, { -ae, -a {	sumus
monuistī	monuistis		es		estis
monuit	monuērunt or ēre		est		sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monueram	monuerāmus	monitus, { -a, -um {	eram	monitī, { -ae, -a {	erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis		erās		eratis
monuerat	monuerant		erat		erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus, { -a, -um	{ erō eris erit	monitī, { -ae, -a	{ erimus eritis erunt
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris or -re	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

## IMPEFECT.

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris or -re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

## PERFECT.

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus, { -a, -um	{ sim sīs sit	monitī, { -ae, -a	{ sīmus sītis sint
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

## PLUPERFECT.

monuissē	monuissēm	monitus, { -a, -um	{ essem essēs esset	monitī, { -ae, -a	{ essēm
monuissēs	monuissētis				
monuisset	monuissent				

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

monē, *advise thou.*monēre, *be thou advised.*monēte, *advise ye.*monēmini, *be ye advised.*

## FUTURE.

monētō, *thou shalt advise.*monētor, *thou shalt be adv'd.*monētō, *he shall advise.*monētor, *he shall be advised.*monētōte, *you shall advise.*monento, *they shall advise.*monentor, *they shall be adv'd.*



INFINITIVE.

PRES. monēre, <i>to advise.</i>	monēri, <i>to be advised.</i>
PERF. monuisse, <i>to have adv'd.</i>	monitum (-am, -um) esse,
FUT. monitūrum (-am, -um)	<i>to have been advised.</i>
esse, <i>to be about to advise.</i>	monitum iri, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. monēns, -entis, <i>advising.</i>	
FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um,	GER. monendus, -a, -um.
<i>about to advise.</i>	
	PERF. monitus, -a, -um, <i>advised, having been advised.</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

G. monendī, <i>of advising.</i>	
D. monendē, <i>for advising.</i>	
AC. monendum, <i>advising.</i>	AC. monitum, <i>to advise.</i>
AB. monendē, <i>by advising.</i>	AB. monitū, <i>to advise, to be advised.</i>

482. THIRD CONJUGATION.—E-VERBS.

regō, *rule.*

Principal Parts: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus.

INDICATIVE.

Active.

Passive.

PRESENT.

*I rule, etc.*

*I am ruled, etc.*

regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris or -re	regimini
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur

IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling, etc.*

*I was ruled, etc.*

regēbam, etc.

regēbar, etc.

(See the same tense of moneō.)

## FUTURE.

*I shall rule, etc.**I shall be ruled, etc.*

regam regēmus

regar regēmur

regēs regētis

regēris, or -re regēmini

reget regent

regētur regentur

## PERFECT.

*I have ruled, etc.**I have been ruled.*

rēxī

rēctus (-a, -um) sum

rēxistī, etc.

rēctus es, etc.

(Compare the same tenses of **amō** or **moneō**.)

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled, etc.**I had been ruled, etc.*

rēxeram, etc.

rēctus (-a, -um) eram, etc.

(Compare the same tenses of **amō** or **moneō**.)

## FUTURE PERFECT.

rēxerō, etc.

rēctus (-a, -um) erō, etc.

(Compare the same tenses of **amō** or **moneō**.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

regam regāmus

regar regāmur

regās regātis

regāris or -re regāmini

regat regant

regātur regantur

## IMPERFECT.

regerem

regerer

regerēs, etc.

regerēris or -re, etc.

(The first **e** of the ending is short; except for this the endings are like those of the same tense in **moneō**.)

## PERFECT.

rēxerim

rēctus (-a, -um) sim

rēxeris, etc.

rēctus sīs, etc.

(Compare the same tenses of **amō** and **moneō**.)

## PLUPERFECT.

rēxissem, etc.

rēctus (-a, -um) essem, etc.

(Compare the same tenses of **amō** and **moneō**.)

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

rege, *rule thou.*regere, *be thou ruled.*regite, *rule ye.*regimini, *be ye ruled.*

## FUTURE.

regitō, *thou shalt rule.*regitor, *thou shalt be ruled.*regitō, *he shall rule.*regitor, *he shall be ruled.*regitōte, *ye shall rule.*reguntō, *they shall rule.*reguntor, *they shall be ruled.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, *to rule.*regī, *to be ruled.*PERF. rēxisse, *to have ruled.*rēctum, (-am, -um) esse, *to have been ruled.*FUT. rēctūrum (-am, -um) esse, *to be about to rule.*rēctum īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. regēns, -entis, *ruling.* PRES. ———FUT. rēctūrus, a, -um, *about to rule.* GER. regendus, -a, -um.PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, *ruled, having been ruled.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

G. regendī, *of ruling.*D. regendō, *for ruling.*AC. regendum, *ruling.*AC. rēctum, *to rule.*AB. regendō, *by ruling.*AB. rēctū, *to rule, to be ruled.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -iō.

**483. Verbs of the third conjugation in iō** retain the *i* of the stem before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *ē*, and in the **gerund** and **present participle**. Hence some of the forms of the present stem are similar to the forms of the fourth conjugation.

## 484. (See 483.)

Principal parts: **Capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.**

## INDICATIVE.

## Active Voice.

## Passive Voice.

## PRESENT.

*I take, am taking, do take, etc.**I am taken, etc.*

capiō capimur

capior

capimur

capis capitis

caperis

capimini

capit capiunt

capitur

capiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I took, was taking, did take, etc.**I was taken, etc.*

capiēbam, etc.

capiēbar, etc.

## FUTURE.

*I shall take, etc.**I shall be taken, etc.*

capiam capiēmus

capiar

capiēmur

capiēs capiētis

capiēris or -re capiēmini

capiet capient

capiētur

capiuntur

## PERFECT.

*I have taken, took, etc.**I have been (was) taken, etc.*

cēpī cepistī, etc.

captus (-a, -um) sum es, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had taken, etc.**I had been taken, etc.*

cēperam, etc.

captus (-a, -um) eram, etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have taken, etc.**I shall have been taken, etc.*

cēperō, etc.

captus (-a, -um) erō, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

capiam capiāmus

capiar

capiāmur

capiās capiātis

capiāris or -re

capiāmini

capiat capiant

capiātur

capiantur

## IMPERFECT.

caperem, caperēs, etc.                      caperer, -erēris or -re, etc.

## PERFECT.

cēperim, cēperis, etc.                      captus (-a, -um) sim, sīs, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpisse, cēpissēs, etc.                      captus (-a, -um) essem, essēs,  
etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cape, take thou.                      capere, be thou taken.  
capite, take ye.                      capimini, be ye taken.  
FUT. capitō, thou shalt take,                      capitor, thou shalt be taken,  
etc.                      etc.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, to take.                      capī, to be taken.  
PERF. cēpisse, to have taken.                      captum (-am, um) esse, to  
FUT. captūrum (-am, -um)                      have been taken.  
esse, to be about to                      captum irī, to be about to be  
take.                      taken.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. capiēns, -ientis, taking.                      GER. capiendus.  
FUT. captūrus, about to take.                      PERF. captus, having been  
taken.

## GERUUD.

## SUPINE.

G. capiendī, of taking, etc.                      AC. captum, to take.  
AB. captū, to take, to be taken.



## 485. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts : **Audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.**

## INDICATIVE.

## Active Voice.

## Passive Voice.

## PRESENT.

*I hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō      audīmus

audior      audīmur

audīs      audītis

audīris or -re      audīmini

audit      audiunt

audītur      audiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam, etc.

audiēbar, etc.

(See the same tenses of **capiō.**)

## FUTURE.

*I will hear, etc.**I will be heard, etc.*

audiam, audiēs, etc.

audiar, audiēris or re, etc.

(See the same tenses of **capiō.**)

## PERFECT.

*I have heard, I heard.**I have been (was) heard.*

audīvī, audivistī, etc.

audītus (-a, -um) sum, es,  
etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audiveram, etc.

audītus (-a, -um) eram,  
etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audiverō, etc.

audītus (-a, -um) erō etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

audiam, audiās, etc.                      audiar, audiaris or -re, etc.  
 (See the same tenses of *capiō*.)

## IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audirēmus	audīrer	audirēmur
audīrēs	audirētis	audirēris or -re	audirēmini
audīret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

## PERFECT.

audiverim, audiveris, etc.              auditus (-a, um) sim, sis, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

audivissem, etc.                      auditus (-a, um) essem, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

audī, hear thou.	audīre, be thou heard.
audīte, hear ye.	audimini, be ye heard.

## FUTURE.

audītō, thou shalt hear.	audītor, thou shalt be heard.
audītō, he shall hear.	audītor, he shall be heard.
audītōte, ye shall hear.	_____
audiuntō, they shall hear.	audiuntor, they shall be heard.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīre, to hear.	audīrī, to be heard.
PERF. audīvisse, to have heard.	auditum (-am, -um) esse, to have been heard.
FUT. audītūrum (-am, -um) esse, to be about to hear.	auditum irī, to be about to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiēns, -entis, hearing.	PERF. audītus, -a, -um, heard, having been heard.
FUT. auditūrus, -a, -um, about to hear.	

## GERUND.

- G. audiendī, *of hearing.*  
 D. audiendō, *for hearing.*  
 AC. audiendum, *hearing.*  
 AB. audiendō, *by hearing.*

## GERUNDIVE.

audiendus, -a, -um.

## SUPINE.

- AC. auditum, *to hear.*  
 AB. auditū, *to hear.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

486. I. Sum (STEMS es, fu), *be.*

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

sum, *I am.*  
 es, *thou art.*  
 est, *he (she, it) is.*

## PLURAL.

sumus, *we are.*  
 estis, *you are.*  
 sunt, *they are.*

## IMPERFECT.

eram, *I was,*  
 erās, *thou wast.*  
 erat, *he was.*

erāmus, *we were.*  
 erātis, *you were.*  
 erant, *they were.*

## FUTURE.

erō, *I shall be.*  
 eris, *thou wilt be.*  
 erit, *he will be.*

erimus, *we shall be.*  
 eritis, *you will be.*  
 erunt, *they will be.*

## PERFECT.

fuī, *I have been, was.*  
 fuistī, *thou hast been, wast.*  
 fuit, *he has been, was.*

fuimus, *we have been, were.*  
 fuistis, *you have been, were.*  
 fuērunt, or fuēre, *they have been, were.*

PLUPERFECT.

<i>fueram, I had been.</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been.</i>
<i>fuerās, thou hadst been.</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been.</i>
<i>fuerat, he had been.</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>fuerō, I shall have been.</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall have been.</i>
<i>fueris, thou wilt have been.</i>	<i>fueritis, you will have been.</i>
<i>fuerit, he will have been.</i>	<i>fuerint, they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>es, be thou.</i>	<i>este, be ye.</i>
---------------------	---------------------

FUTURE.

<i>estō, thou shalt be.</i>	<i>estōte, ye shall be.</i>
<i>estō, he shall be.</i>	<i>suntō, they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	esse, <i>to be.</i>	
PERFECT.	fuisse, <i>to have been.</i>	
FUTURE.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{futūrum, (-am, -um)} \\ \text{fore.} \end{array} \right.$	esse, <i>to be about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. futūrus, -a, -um, *being about to be.*

2. *possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	<i>possum</i>	<i>possumus</i>	<i>possim</i>	<i>possimus</i>
	<i>potes</i>	<i>potestis</i>	<i>possis</i>	<i>possitis</i>
	<i>potest</i>	<i>possunt</i>	<i>possit</i>	<i>possint</i>
IMP.	<i>poteram</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>	<i>possem</i>	<i>possēmus</i>
FUT.	<i>poterō</i>	<i>poterimus</i>		
PERF.	<i>potuī</i>	<i>potuimus</i>	<i>potuerim</i>	<i>potuerimus</i>
PLUP.	<i>potueram</i>	<i>potuerāmus</i>	<i>potuissēmus</i>	<i>potuissēmus</i>
F. P.	<i>potuerō</i>	<i>potuerimus</i>		

INFINITIVE.

PRES. <i>posse</i>	PERF. <i>potuisse</i>
--------------------	-----------------------

## 487.

volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish.*nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not.*mālō, mälle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer.*

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMP.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMP.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	nōlī
	nōlīte
FUT.	nōlitō, etc.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mälle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns
-------	--------	--------



**488.** **Eō, go.**

Principal Parts : **Eō, ire, iī** <sup>1</sup>(or **ivī**) (**itūrus**).

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	eō imus is itis it eunt	PRES.	eam, etc.
IMPERF.	ibam	IMPERF.	irem
FUT.	ibō		
PERF.	iī (ivī)	PERF.	ierim
PLUP.	ieram (iveram)	PLUP.	issem
FUT. PERF.	ierō		
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	i ite	PRES.	ire
FUT.	itō itōte itō euntō	PERF.	isse
		FUT.	itūrum (-am, -um) esse
PARTICIPLES.		GERUND.	
PRES.	iēns. GEN. euntis		
FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um	G.	eundi
		D.	eundō
		AC.	eundum
		AB.	eundō
SUPINE.			
AC.	itum		
AB.	itū		

**489.** **Fero, bear, carry.**

Principal Parts : **Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.**

Active.		Passive.		
INDICATIVE.				
PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris <i>or</i> -re	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus (-a, -um)	sum
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus (-a, -um)	eram
FUT. PERF.	tulerō		lātus (-a, -um)	erō

<sup>1</sup> The contracted form is the commonest.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPERF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus (-a, -um) sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus (-a, -um) essem

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātum (-am, -um) esse
FUT.	lātūrum (-am, -um) esse	lātum iri

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ferēns	PERF. lātus
FUT.	lātūrus (-a, -um)	

## GERUND.

G.	ferendī
D.	ferendō
AC.	ferendum
AB.	ferendō

## GERUNDIVE.

ferendus

## SUPINE.

AC.	lātum
AB.	lātū

## 490.

*Fīō, be made, become.*

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	fīō	fīmus
	fīs	fītis
	fit	fīunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fiam
IMPERF.	fierem
FUT.	fiam
PERF.	factus sum
PLUP.	factus eram
FUT. PERF.	factus erō
PRES.	fiam
IMPERF.	fierem
PERF.	factus sim
PLUPERF.	factus essem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.        fi                fite

INFINITIVE.

PRES. fieri  
 PERF. factum (-am, -um)  
       esse  
 FUT. factum iri

PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDIVE. faciendus, -a, -um

PERFECT. factus, -a, -um.



## VOCABULARY.

---

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first* declension marked "*I.*" are like those of *amō*.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō**, **ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō**, **eō**).

**ā**, **ab**, prep. w. abl., 80, *by*,  
*from*.

**ab-dūcō**, *lead away*.

**ab-eō**, *go away*.

**ab-ripit** (**ab-ripiō**), *took* (or  
*tore*) *off*.

**ab-s-tineō** (**-tinēre**, **-tinuī**,  
**-tentus**), *hold back*, *abstain*.

**ab-sum** (**ab-esse**, **ā-fuī**),  
302, *be away*, *be distant*.

**ac**, conj., *and*. (Before con-  
sonants only.)

**ac-cidō** (**-cidere**, **-cidī**, —),  
*happen*.

**ac-cipiō** (**-cipere**, **-cēpī**, **-cep-**  
**tus**), *receive*.

**ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, adj., *keen*,  
*eager* (*i-stem*).

**aciēs**, **ēī**, f., 302, *line of*  
*battle*.

**ācriter**, adv., *keenly*, *eagerly*.

**ad**, prep. w. acc., 145, *to*  
(denoting place to which),  
*at*. With numerals, *about*.

**ad-dūcō**, *lead to*.

**ad-hibeō** (**-hibēre**, **-hibuī**,  
**-hibitus**), *furnish*, *employ*  
[**ad-habeō**].

**ad-iungo** (**-iungere**, **-iūnxī**,  
**-iūnctus**), *unite*.

**ad-sum** (**ad-esse**, **af-fuī**), *be*  
*present*.

**adulēscēns**, **-ntis**, m. (and  
f.), *young man*, *youth*  
(*i-stem*).

**ad-ventus**, **-ūs**, m., *arrival*  
[**ad-venio**].

**aedificō**, I., *build*.

**aeger**, **-gra**, **-grum**, adj.,  
*sick*, *feeble*.

**aegrē**, adv., *with difficulty*,  
*hardly*.



- af-ferō (af-ferre, at-tulī, al-lātum), *bring to* [ad-ferō].
- af-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus), *affect, some one (in some manner)* [ad-faciō].
- ager, agrī, m., 59, *field*.  
Plural, *the country, as distinguished from the town*.
- agmen, -inis, n., 158, *army on the march, a marching column*.
- āgnōscō, āgnōscere, āgnōvī, āgnōtūs, *recognize*. (Cp. cōgnōscō.)
- agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *conduct, perform, do*.
- aliquis, -qua, quid, indef. pron., *some one, any one*.
- alius, -a, -ud (gen., -īus), adj., 319, *another, other*; alius . . . alius, *one . . . another*.
- alter, -era, -erum (gen., -īus), adj., *the other (of two)*; alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other*.
- altus, -a, -um, adj., 54, *high, deep*.
- amat, *loves*.
- amīcitia, -ae, *friendship*.
- amīcus, -ī, 47, *friend*.
- ā-mittō, *lose*.
- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus, I., 80, *to like or love*.
- amplius, adv., *more widely*.
- animus, -ī, *mind, consciousness*.
- an-nuō (-nuere, -nuī, -nūtus), *to nod*.
- annus, -ī, m., 145, *year*.
- ante, prep. w. acc., *before*.
- ante-sīgnānus, -ī, *a soldier whose position was in front of the standard*.
- apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open, exposed*.
- ap-pellō, I., *call to, address*.
- apud, prep. w. acc., *near to, in the presence of*.
- aqua, -ae, 289, *water*.
- aquila, -ae, *an eagle*. The principal standard of a legion.
- aquilifer, -erī, m. [aquila, ferō], *an eagle-bearer or standard-bearer*.

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first* declension marked "I." are like those of *amō*.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as *ab-dūcō*, *ab-eō*), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as *dūcō*, *eō*).

**arma**, -ōrum (in plural only), 65, *weapons (of all kinds, both for attack and defence)*.

**armātūrae**. See **levis**.

**ascēsus**, -ūs, m., *ascent*.

**atque**, 91, *and*.

**audeō**, audēre, ausī, ausus, *dare*.

**audiō**, audīre, audīvī, audītus, *hear*.

**augeō**, augēre, auxī, auctus, *increase*.

**aut**, conj., *or*; **aut... aut**, *either... or*.

**auxilium**, -ī, 116, *aid or help*. Plural usually *auxiliaries* or *light-armed troops*.

**avus**, -ī, *grandfather*.

**ā-vertō** (-vertere, -vertī, -versus), *turn away*.

**ballista**, -ae, *a machine for throwing stones, used in war*.

**balteus**, -ī, *belt*.

**barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., 86, *uncivilized*.

**bellum**, -ī, 71, *war*.

**bene**, adv. [**bonus**], 247, *well*.

**beneficium**, -ī [**bene-faciō**], *kindness*.

**bonus**, -a, -um, adj., 91, 240, *good*.

**brevis**, -e, adj., *brief* (i-stem).

**campus**, -ī, *a level place, a plain*.

**capiō**, capere, cēpī, captus, 289, *take*.

**captīvus**, -ī, 47, *prisoner*.

**captus est**, *was captured*.

**caput**, -itis, n., *head*.

**cassis**, -idis, f., *helmet*.

**cāsus**, -ūs, m., *accident, misfortune*.

**castellum**, -ī, *a fortified place, fort*.

**castra**, -ōrum (in plural only), 111, *camp*.

**causa**, -ae, *cause*.

**celeriter**, adv., 247, *quickly*.

**celerius**, adv., comp. of **celeriter**.

**centum**, num. adj., indeclinable, *hundred*.

**centuriō**, -ōnis, m., 319, *centurion*.

**certē**, adv., *assuredly, surely*.

**certus**, -a, -um, adj., 348, *certain, trustworthy*.

**cibus**, -ī, *food*.

**citerior**, -ius, adj., *hither, nearer*.

**circuitus**, -ūs, m., *a circuit*.

**circum**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *around, about*.

**circum-eō**,  
**circum-veniō**, } *surround*.

cīvis, -is, m. (and f.), *citizen* (i-stem).

cīvitās, -ātis, f., 377, *a state or nation*.

clam, adv., *secretly*.

classis, -is, f., 171, *fleet* (i-stem).

cōgitō, I., *think*.

cōgnōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognotus, 348, *learn about, recognize, examine*.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coactus [co-agō], 317, *collect, compel*.

cohors, -rtis, f., 247, *cohort* (i-stem).

collis, -is, m., 158, *hill* (i-stem); summus collis, 158, *top of the hill*.

colōnia, -ae, *colony*.

com-, in compounds for cum.

coma, -ae, *hair*.

com-mittō, 271, *bring together*; proelium com-mittere, *to engage in battle*.

commodus, -a, -um, adj., *convenient, proper*.

com-plūrēs, -a (iv plural only), *very many*

con-cidō (-cidere, -cidi, —), *fall*.

concilium, -ī, 59, *council*.

con-clāmō, I., *exclaim*.

con-currō (-currere, -currī, -cursus), *run together (from opposite directions)*.

cōn-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tus), *to complete, exhaust*.

cōn-firmō, I., *encourage, confirm*.

con-locō, I., 96, *to place, station*.

con-loquium, -ī, *a conference (cum-loquor)*.

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus, 405, dep., *attempt, try*.

cōnsilium, -ī, 59, *advice, plan, skill, prudence*.

cōn-sistō (-sistere, -stitī, -stitum), *stand, stop*.

cōn-spectus, -ūs, m., *a sight, view*.

cōnstituit, *determined*.

cōn-stituō (-stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus), *establish, station, determine*.

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in -us are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in -um are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first* declension marked "I." are like those of amō.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as ab-dūcō, ab-eō), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as dūcō, eō).

cōn-stō (-stāre, -stetī, -stātus, Cp. do), *stand firm, stop* (intrans.).

con-tendō (-tendere, -tendī, -tentum), 256, *strive, hasten*; sometimes, *to fight*.

continenter, adv., *continuously*.

con-tineō (-tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus), 233, *to hold together*; passive also, *is bounded*.

contrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *opposite to, against*.

con-veniō, *come together, agree*.

con-vocō, I., *call together*.

cōpia, -ae, 41, *abundance*.

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing of an army*.

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *believe*.

cum, conj., *when, since* (causal), *although*.

cum, prep. w. abl., 80, *together with, with* (denoting accompaniment).

cūr? adv., *wherefore?*

cursus, -ūs, m., *a running*.

dare sē in dēditionem, *to surrender himself (herself), themselves*.

dat, *gives*.

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning, of*.

decumānus, -a, -um, adj., *of or belonging to the tenth (legion)*.

dēditō, -iōnis, f., *surrender*.

dē-fendo (-fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus), 256, *defend*.

dē-ferō, *bear away*.

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., 54, *tired, weary*.

dē-fīgō (-fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus), *fix, fasten*.

dē-iciō (-icere, -iēcī, -iectus), *throw down*.

de-inde, adv., *then, secondly*.

dē-mittō, *to lower*.

dē-pōnō, *lay aside, set down*.

dēspēratiō, -ōnis, f., *desperation*.

dē-sum, *fail, lack, be away*.

dexter, -era, -erum, adj., *right (hand)*.

dīcit, *says*.

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, 264, *say*.

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., 289, *day*; ultō diē, *late in the day*.

dif-ferō (dif-ferre, dis-tulī, dī-lātus), *to change*.

difficilis, -e, adj., *difficult*.

difficultās, -atis, f., *difficulty*.

dīgnitās, -ātis, f., *dignity*.

dīligenter, adv., *diligently*.

dīligentia, -ae, *diligence*.

dī-mittō, *send away*.

diū, adv., *for a long time*.



diūtius, adv. Comp. of diu.	eō, ire, ivī (iī), (itūrus), 488, to go.
dixit, said.	eques, -itis, m., 133, horse-man.
dō, dare, dedī, datus, 104, give.	equitātus, -ūs, m., 264, cavalry.
domus, -ī or -ūs (see 472), f., 420, house, home.	equus, -ī, 47, horse; ex equō, on horseback.
dōnum, -ī, gift.	erat, was.
dubitō, I., hesitate.	est, is.
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 264, lead.	et, 41, and; et...et, both...and.
dum, conj., while.	etiam, adv. and conj., even.
duplicō, I., to double.	ē-vocō, I., call forth.
dux, ducis, m. and f. (duco), a leader.	ex. See ē.
ē, ex, prep. w. abl., 191, from, out from, out of.	excellēns, gen. -ntis, adj., excellent.
edō, edere, ēdī, ēsus, eat.	ex-cīdō (-cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus), cut down.
ē-dūcō, lead away.	ex-cipiō (-cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus), receive, draw out, capture.
ef-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus), accomplish, execute, make.	ex-eō, go away.
ego, meī (dat., mihi; acc., abl., mē), pers. pron. I.	exercitus, -ūs, m., 215, army.
elephantus, -ī, elephant.	ex-fugiō, flee away.
ē-liciō (-licere, -licuī or -lēxī, -licitus), entice, lure forth.	ex-īstīmō, I., 396, think, suppose.
	ex-īvit (plural, -īvērunt), went away.

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first* declension marked "I." are like those of *amō*.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as *ab-dūcō*, *ab-eō*), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as *dūcō*, *eō*).



**ex-spectō**, I., *await, expect.*

**extrēmus**, -a, -um, adj., 240,  
*extreme, outermost.*

**facilis**, -e, adj., 348, *easy*  
(i-stem).

**facile**, adv., 247, *easily.*

**faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus**,  
294, *do, make.*

**factiō**, -ōnis, f., (*political*)  
*party.*

**facultās**, -ātis, f., 396, *fac-*  
*ulty.*

**falsus**, -a, -um, adj., *false.*

**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *to*  
*bear* (489).

**ferōculus**, -a, -um, adj.,  
*ferocious*; [**ferox**, (*fierce*)  
-ulus, a diminutive here  
expressing *contempt*.]

**fertilis**, -e, adj., *fertile.*

**fidēs**, -eī, f., *trust, trustworth-*  
*iness.*

**fīdus**, a, -um, adj., *faithful.*

**fīlia**, -ae, *daughter.*

**fīlius**, -ī (Vocative sing.  
**fīlī**), 96, *son.*

**fīnis**, -is, m., 405, *limit, end*;  
plural, *boundaries, hence,*  
*country, land* (i-stem).

**fīō**, **fierī**, **factus**, passive of  
**faciō** (490) *become, be*  
*made.*

**fīrmus**, -a, -um, adj., *firm.*

**flō**, I., *blow.*

**flūmen**, -inis, n., 145, *river.*

**forsitan**, adv., *perhaps.*

**fortis**, -e, adj., *brave* (i-stem).

**fortiter**, adv., *bravely.*

**fortūna**, -ae, 140, *fortune,*  
*chance.*

**fortūnātus**, -a, -um, adj.,  
*fortunate.*

**frāter**, **frātris**, m., *brother.*

**frūmentāria**, adj., f. See **rēs**.

**frūmentum**, -ī, n., 65, *grain,*  
*provisions.*

**frūstrā**, adv., *vain*

**fuga**, -ae, *flight.*

**fuge**, *flee!*

**fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitus**,  
363, *flee.*

**funditor**, -ōris, m., *slinger.*  
*A light-armed soldier who*  
*threw stones with a sling.*

**gerō**, **gerere**, **gessī**, **gestus**,  
215, *to do, wage.*

**gladius**, -ī, 71, *sword.*

**glōria**, -ae, *glory.*

**grātia**, -ae, *favor*; **gratias**  
**agere**, *to thank.*

**grātus**, -a, -um, adj., 54,  
*pleasing, acceptable* (refers  
to things and animals).

**gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy, bur-*  
*dened, severe* (i-stem).

**graviter**, adv., *heavily, se-*  
*verely.*

**habet**, *has.*

**habeō**, **habēre**, **habuī**, **habi-**  
**tus**, 184, *have.*

**habuit** (plural **habuērunt**),  
have had, had.

**hīc**, **haec**, **hōc**, demons.  
pron., *this* ; also, as pers.  
pron., *he, she, it* (476).

**hiems**, -emis, f., *winter*.

**hīberna**, -ōrum, n. (in  
plural only), 65, *winter-*  
*quarters*. (The full form,  
**castra hīberna**, is seldom  
used.)

**hodiē**, for **hōc diē**, *to-day*.

**homō**, -inis, m. (and f.), 145,  
*man*.

**hōra**, -ae, *hour*.

**hostis**, -is, m. (and f.), 165,  
*enemy* (i-stem).

**ibī**, adv., 65, *in that place*.

**īdem**, **eadem**, **idem**, demon.  
pron., *same*.

**idōneus**, -a, -um, adj., 96,  
*suitable*. (Referring to  
places or people.)

**īgnis**, -is, m., *fire* (i-stem).

**ille**, **illa**, **illud**, demon.  
pron., *that* ; also as pres.  
pron., *he, she, it* (476).

**impedīmentum**, -ī, 116.

**imperātor**, -ōris, m., *a title*  
*of honor given to a general*  
*by acclamation of the sol-*  
*diers after his first victory.*  
*General-in-chief.*

**imperium**, -ī, *dominion, rule,*  
*supreme command.*

**imperō**, I., *command*. (Fol-  
lowed by **ut**.)

**impetus**, -ūs, m., 294, *attack*.

**im-pōnō**, *place upon, impose*.

**in**, prep. with acc. and abl.,  
47 ; with acc., *into, against* ;  
with abl., *in, on*.

**in-**, equivalent sometimes to  
English prefix *un-*.

**in-cendit**, *burned*.

**in-cendo** (-cendere, -cendi,  
-census), *to burn, be angry*.

**in-columis**, -e, *unharmed*.

**in-crēbuit**, *increased*.

**in-crēdibilis**, -e, adj. (crēdō),  
*incredible* (i-stem).

**īnferior**, -ius, adj., 240,  
*lower*.

**īn-ferō** (in-ferre, in-tulī, il-  
lātus), *carry or bring to*  
*or into* ; **bellum inferre**, *to*  
*wage war*.

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in -us are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in -um are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first* declension marked "I." are like those of  
**amō**.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō**, **ab-eō**), it is  
because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as  
**dūcō**, **eō**).

**īnfimus**, -a, -um, adj., 240, *lowest*.

**īnfra**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *below*.

**in-īquus**, -a, -um, adj., *unequal*.

**in-opia**, -ae, 140, *lack*.

**īn-struō** (-struere, -strūxī, -strūctus), 302, *construct*.

Of troops, *to draw up*.

**inter**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *among, between*.

**inter-eō**, *perish*.

**interfectus est**, *was killed*.

**inter-ficiō** (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus), 319, *kill*.

**interim**, adv., *meanwhile*.

**inter-īvit** (plural -ivērunt), *perished*.

**inter-mittō**, *omit, discontinue*.

**inter-pōnō**, *place between, interpose*.

**inter-sum**, *be between*.

**intrā**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *within, inside*.

**ipse**, -a, -um, demon. adj. and pron., *self*.

**is, ea, id**, demon. pron., *this*.

Also as pers. pron., *he, she, it* (476).

**iste, ista, istud**, demon. pron., *that (of yours)*.

**ita**, adv., 104, *thus*.

**ita-que**, conj., *and so, and thus*.

**item**, adv., *in the same manner*.

**iter, itineris**, n., 184, *a march, journey, road*.

**iterum**, adv., *again*.

**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus**, *throw*.

**iūdicō**, I., *judge, examine*.

**iūrō**, I., *take an oath*.

**labor, -ōris**, m., *labor*.

**labōrō**, I., 86, *to work*.

**laetus**, -a, -um, adj., *joyful*.

**lapis, -idis**, n., *stone*.

**lātus**, -a, -um, adj., *wide*.

**laudat**, *praises*.

**laudō**, I., *to praise*.

**lēgātus, -ī**, 47, *legate, lieutenant, envoy*.

**legiō, -ōnis**, f., 158, *legion*.

**legiōnārius, -a, -um**, adj., 289, *belonging to a legion, legionary*.

**levis, -e**, adj., *light (in weight), (i-stem)*.

**levis armātūrae**, *light-armed soldiers*.

**līber, -era, -erum**, adj., 59, *free*.

**līberī, -ōrum**, m. (in plu. only), 59, *children*.

**lībertās, -ātis**, f., *liberty*.

**littera, -ae**, *letter*.

**lītus, -oris**, n., 171, *coast*.

**locus, -ī** (plural **loci** and **loca**), 96, *place, position, spot*.

longus, -a, -um, adj., 54,  
*long.*

longē, adv., 247, *far, widely.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus, 405,  
*speak, say.*

lūna, -ae, *moon.*

magis, adv., *more.*

magister, -rī, m., *master,*  
*captain.*

māgnus, -a, -um, adj., 54,  
240, *large, great.*

māior, -ius, adj., 240, *larger,*  
*greater.*

malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad.*

manipulāris, -e, adj., *of the*  
*same (i-stem) military com-*  
*pany, comrade.*

māximus, -a, -um, adj., 240,  
*largest, greatest.*

mē. See ego.

mēcum. For cum mē.

meī. See ego.

melior, -ius, adj., 240, *better.*

memoria, -ae, *memory.*

mēnsa, -ae, *table.*

mentiō, -ōnis, f., *mention.*

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj.  
and pron., *my, mine.*

mihi. See ego.

mīles, -itis, m., 133, *soldier.*

mille (plural mīlia, -ium),  
num. adj., indeclinable in  
sing., *thousand.*

minimus, -a, -um, adj.,  
superlative of parvus,  
*smallest, least.*

minor, -us, adj. Compara-  
tive of parvus, *smaller,*  
*less.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, mis-  
sus, 215, *send.*

moneō, monēre, monuī, mo-  
nitus, *advise.*

mōns, montis, m., 233,  
*mountain (i-stem).*

morior, morī, mortuus,  
dep., *die.*

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mō-  
tus, *move.*

mulier, -erīs, f., *woman;*  
mulieres, nom. and acc.  
plural, *women.*

multitūdō, -inis, f., *multi-*  
*tude.*

multus, -a, -um, adj., 540,  
240, 247, *much;* plural  
*many.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first* declension marked "I." are like those of *amō*.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as *ab-dūcō, ab-eō*), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as *dūcō, eō*).



mūrus, -ī, 91, *wall*.

nam, adv., *for*.

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *nation*.

nātūra, -ae, *nature (of a thing)*; nātū (abl. of nātus), *by birth, in age*.

nauta, -ae, m., *sailor*.

nāvis, -is, f., 177, *ship* (i-stem); *navem solvit* (plural solvērunt), *set sail*; *nāvis longa*, *ship of war*; *nāvis onerāria*, *transport, merchant vessel*.

-ne, interrog. adv. Sign of a question (41).

nē, conj., *in order that . . . not*. With verbs of fearing, *lest*. (With subj.) With imperative, *not*.

nec, conj., *and not*; *nec . . . nec*, *neither . . . nor*.

nēmō (dat. nēmīnī), m. and f., *no one, nobody*.

ne-que, conj., *and not*; *neque . . . neque*, *neither . . . nor*.

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., *neither (of two)*.

nēve, adv., *and not, nor*.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black*.

nihil, n. (indeclinable), *nothing*.

nī-si, conj., *if not, unless, except*.

noceō, nocēre, nocuī [noci-tūrus], *injure*.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [nōn-volo], 381, *be unwilling*.

nōn, adv., *not*.

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some, several*.

nōn-numquam, adv., *sometimes*.

nōs, nostrum (nobis). Plural of ego, *we*.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron., 256, *our*.

novus, -a, -um, adj., 116, *new, strange*; *novissimum agmen*, *rear rank*.

nox, -noctis, f., 165, *night* (i-stem).

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *bare*.

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. (nē-ullus), *none, no one*.

numerus, -ī, 47, *number*.

numquam, adv., *never*.

nunc, adv., *now*.

nūntiō, I., 80, *report, tell*.

nūntius, -ī, 65, *messenger*.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of*.

obses, -idis, m. and f., 165, *hostage*.

ob-tineō (-tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus), 233, *possess*.

occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *opportunity*.

occupō, I., 86, *siege, take possession of*.



of-ferō (of-ferre, ob-tulī, ob-lātus), *bring forward, offer.*

ōlim, adv., *once formerly.*

omnis, -e, adj., 171, *all, every* (i-stem).

onerārius, -a, -um, adv. (*something*) *that bears a burden.* See nāvis.

opera, -ae, f., *exertion, work.*

opīnō, -ōnis, f., *opinion, belief.*

oppidum, -ī, 54, *town.*

op-pūgnō, I., 86, *to attack.*

optimus, -a, -um, adj., superlative of bonus, 240, *best.*

opus, -eris, n., 302, *work.*  
Also, *need.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech.*

paene, adv., *almost.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal.*

pars, partis, f., 140, *part, etc., hence region, place, direction* (i-stem).

parō, I, 171, *prepare.*

parvus, -a, -um, adj., 215, *little, small.*

passus, -ūs, m., *a pace; mille*

passus, *a Roman mile* (five thousand feet).

pater, -tris, m., *father.*

paucī, -ae, -a, adj., 71, *few.*

paulātim, adv., *little by little, by degrees.*

paulim, adv., } *a little.*  
paulō, adv., }

pecūnia, -ae, *money.*

pedes, -itis, m., 133, *foot-soldier.*

pēior, -ius, adj., comparative of malus, *worse.*

pellō, pellere, pepulī [cp. do], pulsus, *drive out.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through, during, by means of.*

per-dūcō, *conduct to, draw out or lengthen.*

per-exiguus, -a, -um, *very small.*

per-ferō, *convey, endure, complete.*

perīculum, -ī, *danger.*

per-mittō, *permit, give* (something) *up to* (some one).

per-suādeō (-suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus) (followed by ut or ne), 377, *persuade.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in -us are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in -um are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first* declension marked "I." are like those of amō.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as ab-dūcō, ab-eō), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as dūcō, eō).

per-terreō (-terrēre, -terruī, -territus), *terrify*.

per-tineō (-tinere, -tinui, -tentus), 233, *extend*.

per-turbō, I., 319, *disturb greatly, throw into confusion*.

per-veniō, *arrive*.

pēs, -pedis, m., 140, *foot*.

pessimus, -a, -um, adj., superlative of *malus*, *worst*.

petīvīt (plural petīvērunt), *sought*.

peto, petere, petīvī, petītus, *seek, beg, demand*, (followed by *ut* or *ne*), 256.

pīlum, -ī, *a dart or javelin*.

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus, dep., *to promise*.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *to place, put*, 294.

populus, -ī, 71, *people*.

porta, -ae, *gate*; portat, *carries*.

portō, I., 80, *carry*.

possessiō, -ōnis, f., *possession*.

possum, posse, potuī (potissum), 317, *be able, can*.

post, adv. and prep. w. acc., *behind, after, afterward*.

post-eā, adv., *afterward*.

posterus, -a, -um, adj., 240, *next*.

postquam, conj., *after*.

postulō, I., *demand*.

potestās, -ātis, f., *power*.

prae, adv. and prep. w. abl., *before*.

praeda, -ae, 317, *plunder, booty, loot*.

prae-dīcō, *say or tell beforehand, predict, advise, warn, command*.

prae-dūcō, *lead in front of, show*.

prae-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus), *set over, place in command*.

praemium, -ī, *reward*.

prae-mittō, *send before*.

prae-occupō, *seize before*.

prae-sum, *be over, rule*.

praeter, adv. and prep. w. acc., *except, contrary to*.

praeter-eā, adv., *besides*.

praeter-mittō, *omit, neglect*.

premō, premere, pressī, pressus, 289, *to press, harass*.

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., 240, *first*.

prīmō, adv., } *first, at first*.  
prīmum, adv., }

prīnceps, -ipis, m., 133, *a leader, chief*.

prior, -ius, adj., 240, *former, previous*; prius, adv., *earlier, first*.

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of*.

procul, adv., *far distant, from afar.*

prō-cumbō (-cumbere, -cubui, -cubitus), *fall or lie down.*

prō-currō (-currere, -cucurri [cp. do], -cursus), *run forward.*

prō-dūcō, *lead forth.*

proelium, -ī, n., 145, *battle.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus, 372, *set out, go.*

pro-hibeō (-hibere, -hibui, -hibitus), 191, *to keep (some one) away (often with ex.).*

prō-iēcit, *threw.*

prope, adv. and prep. w. acc., *near.*

properat, *hastens.*

properō, I., 165, *hasten, hurry.*

propior, -ius, adj., *nearer.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *because of.*

prōvincia, -ae, *province.*

prō-videō, *foresee, provide for.*

proximus, -a, -um, adj., *next, nearest (last).*

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *public.* (See rēs.)

puella, -ae, *girl.*

puer, -ī, m., *boy.*

pūgna, -ae, 86, *a fight.*

pūgnat, *fight* (3d person).

pūgnō, I, 80, *to fight.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful.*

pulvis, -eris, m., *dust.*

putō, I., *suppose, think.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesītus, *ask, inquire; also seek* (followed by ut).

quam, adv., 226, *than.* With superlative *as ... as possible.*

-que, conj., 91, *and.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what.*

quid? *what?*

quīdam, quaedam, quidam (quod)dam, indef. pron., *a certain (one), a.*

quis, quae, quid (quod), interrog. pron. and adj., *who? which? what?*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first* declension marked "I." are like those of *amō*.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as *ab-dūcō*, *ab-eō*), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as *dūcō*, *eō*).

quisquam, quaequam, quid-  
(quod) quam, indef. pron.,  
*any, any one.*

quisque, quaeque, quid-  
(quod) que, indef. pron.,  
*each one, each, every.*

quod, conj., 396, *because.*

quoniam, adv., 158, *because.*

quoque, conj., *also.*

ratio, -ōnis, f., *plan, nature*  
(*of something*), *affair,*  
*opinion.*

re-, in compounds as a prefix,  
*again.*

recēpit. See se.

re-cipiō (cipere, -cēpī, -cep-  
tus), 319, *take back, re-*  
*ceive.*

rēctus, -a, -um, adj., *straight,*  
*direct.*

re-cuperō, I., *recover.*

re-d-eō, *go back.*

re-dūcō, *lead back.*

re-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fec-  
tus), *refit, refresh.*

regīna, -ae, *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, f., 171, *region.*

re-liquō (-linquere, -liquī,  
-līctus), 317, *leave behind.*

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. (cp.  
relinquō), 165, *remaining,*  
*the rest of.*

re-periō (-perīre, -perī,  
-pertus), *find out.*

rēs, rei, f., 271, *thing, state*

*of affairs; rēs frūmen-*  
*tāria, provisions; rēs*  
*pūblica, government (at*  
*Rome).*

re-spondeō (-spondēre,  
-spondī, -spōnsus), *to*  
*reply.*

re-vocō, I., *call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

rīvus, -ī, *stream.*

rosa, -ae, *rose.*

rūrsus, adv., *again, back*  
*again.*

sacrāmentum, -ī, *the oath of*  
*allegiance to the general-in-*  
*chief taken by a Roman*  
*soldier when he enlisted.*

saepe, adv., *often.*

saepius, adv., *more or too*  
*frequently.*

sagittārius, -ī, *archer.*

sāl, sālis, m., *salt.*

salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety.*

sānitās, -ātis, f., *soundness*  
(*of mind or body*).

satis, adv., *enough.*

scelus, -eris, n., *crime.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus,  
*know, perceive.*

scūtum, -ī, *shield.*

sē (or sēsē), acc. of reflex-  
ive pron. of third pers.,  
*himself, herself, itself,*  
*themselves* (478); sē recē-  
pit (plural recēperunt),



*retreated.* (Cp. English "to betake one's self.")  
*sēcernō, sēcernere, sēcervī, sēcētus, to separate.*  
*sēcum, for cum sē.*  
*secundus, -a, -um, adj., favorable, second.*  
*sed, conj., 65, but.*  
*semper, adv., always.*  
*senātus, -us, m., senate.*  
*septimus, -a, -um, adj., the seventh.*  
*sequor, sequī, secūtus, dep., 372, follow.*  
*servātus est, was saved.*  
*servō, I., save.*  
*sēsē. See sē.*  
*sī, conj., if.*  
*sīgnum, -ī, 104, standard or ensign, signal.*  
*silva, -ae, 41, wood, forest.*  
*sine, prep. w. abl., without.*  
*sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left (hand).*  
*sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, single.*  
*solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, to loose. See navis.*  
*soror, -ōris, f., sister.*

*spatium, -ī, space.*  
*spērō, I., look for, hope.*  
*spēs, speī, f., hope.*  
*sponte (abl.), always with mea, tua, sua, etc., of (one's) free will, voluntarily.*  
*statim, adv., immediately.*  
*statiō, -ōnis, f., a guard, sentry; in statiōne, on guard.*  
*stō, stāre, stetī, status (cp. do), to stand.*  
*studium, -i, 86, study, zeal.*  
*stultissimus, -a, -um, adj. (superlative of stultus), most stupid, idiotic.*  
*stultus, -a, -um, adj., stupid.*  
*sub, prep. w. acc. and abl., under.*  
*sūb-iciō (-icere, -iēcī, -iectus), place under, expose [sub-iaciō].*  
*subitō, adv., 247, suddenly.*  
*suf-ferō (suf-ferre, sus-tulī, sub-lātus), offer, sustain, endure [sub-ferō].*  
*sum-moveō (-movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus), remove, drive back [sub-moveō].*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first* declension marked "I." are like those of *amō*.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as *ab-dūcō, ab-eō*), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as *dūcō, eō*).



sus-tineō (-tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus), 372, *hold out against.*

sub-veniō, *come to one's assistance.*

summa, -ae, *amount, total.*

summus, -a, -um, adj., 145, *highest, top of.*

sunt, *are.*

superior, -ius, adj., 240, *higher.*

superō, I., 104, *surpass, conquer.*

super-sum, *remain over, be left over, survive.*

suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *above.*

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron., 191, *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.*

tabernāculum, -i, *tent.*

tam, adv., *to such a degree, so.*

tamen, adv., *nevertheless.*

tandem, adv., *finally.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so much.*

tantum, adv., *only.*

tardō, I., *retard.*

tēcum, for cum tē.

tēlum, -ī, 65, *especially a javelin.*

tempestās, -ātis, f., *storm, weather.*

temptō, I., 133, *try.*

tempus, -oris, n., 191, *time.*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, 191, *hold, keep.*

terra, -ae, 41, *land, country.*

tertius, -a, -um, adj., *the third.*

timeō, timēre, timuī, 335, *to fear.*

tīrō, -ōnis, m., *recruit, inexperienced soldier* (sometimes used in contempt).

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, all, entire.*

trā-dūcō, *lead across.*

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across.*

trāns-eō, *go across.*

trāns-fīgō (-fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus), *pierce through.*

trāns-portō, I., *carry across.*

tribūnus, -ī, 71, *tribune.*

tū, tuī (tibi, tē), pers. pron., *thou, you.*

tuba, -ae, *trumpet.*

tum, adv., *then* (of time).

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron., *thy, thine, your, yours.*

ubi, adv., *where.*

ullus, -a, -um, adj., *any (one).*

ulterior, -ius, adj., *further.*

ultrā, adv., *beyond, further.*

ultrō, adv., *moreover, of one's own accord.*

umerus, -ī, *shoulder*.

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj.,  
*one, alone*; ad ūnum, *to*  
*the last one* (479).

urbs, urbis, f., 184, *city*  
(i-stem).

ūsus, ūsus, m., *use, value*.

ut, conj., with subj., *in order*  
*that, so that*.

uter, utra, utrum, interrog.  
pron., *which* (of two)?

uterque, utraque, utrum-  
que, indef. pron., *each* (of  
two), *both*.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, dep., 372,  
*to use, employ*.

utrum, adv., *whether*;  
utrum...an, *whether...or*.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*.

vāgīna, -ae, *scabbard*.

vallis, -is, f., *valley* (i-stem).

vāllum, -ī, *the rampart or*  
*wall of a camp*.

venīō, venīre, venī, ventus,  
355, *come*.

venit (plural veniunt),  
*comes*.

vēnit (plural vērunt),  
*came*.

vērō, adv., }  
vērūm, adv., } *truly*.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus,  
*turn, turn around or about*.

vērūm, -ī, neuter of adj.  
used as noun, *the truth*.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj.  
and pron., *your, yours* (of  
more than one person).

veterānus, -a, -um, adj.,  
*veteran*.

via, viae, 41, *way, road,*  
*street*.

vīctor, -ōris, m., *victor*.

vīctoria, -ae, *victory*.

vidē, *see!*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus,  
*to see*.

vīdit (plural vīdērunt), *saw*.

vir, virī, m., 59, *man*; some-  
times, *hero*.

virtūs, virtūtis, f., 140,  
*manliness, bravery*.

vīta, vītae, *life*.

vītō, I., *avoid*.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus,  
*live*.

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first declension* are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second declension* in -us are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second declension* in -um are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first declension* marked "I." are like those of *amō*.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as *ab-dūcō, ab-eō*), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as *dūcō, eō*).

vīvus, -a, -um, adj., *alive*.

vix, adv., *scarcely*.

volō, velle, voluī, 381, *wish*,  
*be willing*.

vulnerat, *wounds*.

vulnerō, 1., 80, *to wound*.

vulnus, -eris, n., *wound*.



## PROPER NAMES.

---

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

Nouns of the *third* declension are *masculine*, unless otherwise stated.

**Aduatuca**, -ae, a camp established by Caesar among the Eburones.

**Aeduī**, -ōrum, a large tribe in Gaul which during the conquest of Gaul by Caesar was for the most of the time in alliance with the Romans.

**Aeginurus**, -ī, an island near the Roman province of Africa.

**Afrānius**, -i, one of Pompey's lieutenants, who fought against Caesar in Spain.

**Āfrica**, -ae, a Roman province (modern Tunis and eastern Morocco).

**Āfricus**, -ī, the west-south-west wind.

**Alexandria**, -ae, the metropolis of Egypt.

**Alliēnus**, -ī.

**Allobrogēs**, -um, a Gallic tribe living in the valley of the Rhodanus or Rhone, and subject to the Roman power.

**Alpēs**, -ium, the Alps.

**Ambiānī**, -ōrum, a tribe in Gaul.

**Antonius**, -ī, a lieutenant of Caesar's; who later delivered the funeral oration over Caesar's body (see Shakespeare, "Julius Caesar"); rose as a triumvir to supreme power over the eastern half of the Roman dominion, and was finally defeated with Cleopatra by Octavius, the first Roman emperor, at Actium.



**Anquillaria**, -ae, a town in Epirus.

**Apollonia**, -ae, a town in Epirus.

**Apsus**, -ī, a river in Epirus.

**Aquītānus**, -a, -um, an inhabitant of Aquitania.

**Aquītānia**, -ae, the southwestern portion of Gaul.

**Arar**, **Araris**, a tributary of the river Rhodanus (Rhône).

**Ariovistus**, -ī, a German chief who invaded Gaul, but was defeated by Caesar.

**Aristius**, -i.

**Arnus**, -ī, the river Arno, in Italy.

**Arvernī**, -ōrum, a Gallic tribe.

**Asia**, -ae, a Roman province in western Asia Minor.

**Atrebātēs**, -um, a tribe in Gaul.

**Aulus**, -ī,

**Auster**, -trī, the south wind.

**Baculus**, -ī.

**Bagrada**, -ae, a river in the Roman province of Africa.

**Belgae**, -ārum, the inhabitants of northeastern Gaul.

**Bellovacī**, -ōrum, a tribe of the Belgae.

**Bibracte**, -is, the capital of the Aedui.

**Bibulus**, -ī.

**Boiī**, -ōrum, a tribe which took part with the Helvetii in the invasion of central Gaul.

**Brittania**, -ae, Britain, at the time of Caesar covered with dense forests and inhabited by tribes of the same race as the Gauls.

**Caeroesi**, -ōrum, a tribe of Gaul.

**Caesar**, -aris. (1) Caius Julius Caesar. (2) Lucius Caesar, commander of a fleet stationed off the coast of Africa to oppose Curio's invasion of that province.

**Cāius**, -ī.

**Calēnus**, -ī, a lieutenant of Caesar.

**Candavia**, -ae, a district in eastern Epirus.

**Cannae**, -ārum, the scene of the great defeat of the Romans by Hannibal.

**Carnūtēs**, -um, a tribe in Gaul.

**Carthāgō**, -inis, Carthage, a

Nouns of the first declension are feminine, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the second declension in -us are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension in -um are neuter.

Nouns of the third declension are masculine, unless otherwise stated.

- great commercial city and bitter rival of Rome.*
- Casticus**, -ī.
- Castra Cornēlia**, *a place upon the coast near Utica, in the Roman province of Africa.*
- Ceutrōnēs**, -um, *a tribe in Gaul.*
- Christus**, -ī, *Christ.*
- Cicerō**, -ōnis, *a lieutenant of Caesar, and brother of the famous orator.*
- Cilicia**, -ae, *a country in southern Asia Minor.*
- Claudius**, -ī.
- Cleopatra**, -ae, *a famous queen of Egypt.*
- Clupea**, -ae, *a town in the Roman province of Africa.*
- Cnaeus**, -ī.
- Cominius**, -ī.
- Commius**, -ī.
- Cōnsidius**, ī.
- Coponius**, -ī.
- Cornēlia**, -ae.
- Crassus**, -ī.
- Crastīnus**, ī.
- Crēta**, -ae, *the island of Crete.*
- Curiō**, -ōnis, *a lieutenant of Caesar, in command of an army which invaded the Roman province of Africa.*
- Dācī**, -ōrum, *the inhabitants of Dacia, east of the river Danube.*
- Divitiacus**, -ī, *a chief of the Aedui.*
- Domitius**, -ī.
- Dumnorix**, -rīgis, *a chief of the Aedui; the brother of Divitiacus.*
- Dyrrhachium**, -ī, *a town in Epirus.*
- Eburōnēs**, -um, *a tribe of the Belgae.*
- Ēpīrus**, -ī, *a district bordering the Adriatic Sea, north of Greece.*
- Fabius**, -ī.
- Galba**, -ae, m.
- Gallia**, -ae, *the country of Gaul.*
- Gallī**, -ōrum, *the Gauls.*
- Garumna**, -ae, *a river in Gaul, now the Garonne.*
- Genāva**, -ae, *a town on the borders of Helvetia, now Geneva.*
- Germānia**, -ae, *Germany: at the time of Caesar covered with forests and inhabited by many semi-savage tribes.*
- Germānī**, -ōrum, *the inhabitants of Germany.*
- Graecia**, -ae, *the country of Greece.*
- Graecī**, -ōrum, *the Greeks.*

- Hadrumentum**, -ī, a town in Africa.
- Hamilcar**, -āris, a Carthaginian general: the father of Hannibal.
- Hannibal**, -alis, the invader of Italy, during Rome's second war with Carthage.
- Hasdrubal**, -ālis, the brother of Hannibal: commander in Spain during the second war of Carthage with Rome.
- Helvētia**, -ae, a district of Gaul; the modern Switzerland.
- Helvētiī**, -ōrum, the inhabitants of Helvetia.
- Hercynia silva**, a great forest along the upper Danube.
- Herminius**, -ī.
- Hispānia**, -ae, Spain: a province of the Roman dominion.
- Hispānus**, -ī, Spaniard.
- Ilerda**, -ae, a town in Spain, now Lerida.
- Italia**, -ae, Italy.
- Iuba**, -ae, m., King of the tribes living north of the Sahara desert and south and west of the Roman province of Africa.
- Ladiēnus**, -ī, one of Caesar's most trusted lieutenants in the conquest of Gaul; but during the civil war one of his bitterest enemies.
- Latīnī**, -ōrum, the inhabitants of Latium, the district to the south of Rome.
- Libō**, -ōnis.
- Licinius**, -ī.
- Lingonēs**, -um, a Gallic tribe.
- Lucius**, -ī.
- Macedonia**, -ae, a Roman province.
- Manilius**, -ī.
- Mārcus**, -ī.
- Menapiī**, -ōrum, a Gallic tribe.
- Morinī**, -ōrum, a Gallic tribe.
- Nymphaeum**, -ī, a place in Epirus.
- Oceanus**, -ī, the Atlantic Ocean.
- Oricum**, -ī, a town in Epirus.
- Padus**, -ī, the river Po, in north Italy.

Nouns of the first declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the second declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the second declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

Nouns of the third declension are *masculine*, unless otherwise stated.

Palaeste, -ēs, f., *a harbor of Epirus.*

Petrōnius, -ī.

Petrosidius, -ī.

Pharsalia, -ae, *a place in Thessaly, where Caesar defeated Pompey.*

Pharsalicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Pharsalia.*

Pīsō, -ōnis.

Plancus, -ī.

Pompēius, -ī, *the famous general, a contemporary, and finally the opponent of Caesar.*

Prōvincia, -ae, *the Province : referring to the Roman province in Southern Gaul, of which Caesar was governor at the beginning of his conquest of the Gauls.*

Ptolomaeus, -ī, *Ptolomy, the title of the kings of Egypt.*

Publius, -ī.

Pullō, -ōnis.

Quintilius, -ī.

Rebilus, -ī.

Regulus, -ī.

Rēmī, -ōrum, *a tribe in Gaul.*

Rēmus, -ī.

Rhēnus, -ī, *the river Rhine.*

Rōma, -ae, *the city Rome.*

Rōmānī, -ōrum, *the Romans.*

Rūfus, -ī.

Saburra, -ae, -m, *a lieutenant of King Juba, an opponent of Curio*

Salōnae, -ārum, *a town upon the Adriatic Sea.*

Scīpiō, -ōnis, *a Roman general who fought with Hasdrubal in Spain, and finally defeated Hannibal at Zama.*

Sēquanī, -ōrum, *a Gallic tribe.*

Sextius, -ī.

Sextus, -ī.

Sicilia, -ae, *the island of Sicily.*

Staberius, -ī.

Suēbī, -ōrum, *a tribe of Germans.*

Sugambri, -ōrum, *a tribe of Germans.*

Sulla, -ae, m., *a famous Roman general, of the generation before Caesar.*

Syria, -ae, *a Roman province.*

Syriacus, -a, -um, adj. *Syrian.*

Thapsus, -ī, *a town in the Roman province of Africa.*

Thessalia, -ae, *Thessaly.*

Thracia, -ae, *the country of Thrace.*

Thrāx, Thrācis, *an inhabitant of Thrace.*

Tiber, -is, *the river Tiber.*

Ticida, -ae.

Ticīnus, -ī.

Tigurīnī, -ōrum, *a sub-tribe or canton of the Helvetii.*



Titurius, -ī.

Titus, -ī.

Trēverī, -ōrum, *a tribe of the Belgae.*

Tulingī, -ōrum, *a tribe which joined with the Helvetii in the invasion of central Gaul.*

Tusculum, -ī, *a town in Latium.*

Usipitēs, -um, *a tribe of Germans.*

Utica, -ae, *a large city in the Roman province of Africa.*

Vārus, -ī, *a lieutenant of Pompey, opposed to Curio in the Roman province of Africa.*

Valerius, -ī.

Vēlocassī, -ōrum, *a tribe of Gaul.*

Volcae Tectosagēs, *a tribe of Gauls living in Germany.*

Vorēnus, -ī.

Zama, -ae, *a place near Carthage, where Hannibal was defeated by Scipio.*

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

Nouns of the *third* declension are *masculine*, unless otherwise stated.



# RULES OF SYNTAX

ARRANGED SYSTEMATICALLY FOR READY REFERENCE.

A. denotes Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar; B., Bennett's<sup>1</sup>; G., Gildersleeve's; H., Harkness'.<sup>2</sup>

28. Appositives agree in case with the nouns which they limit. A. 183, 184. B. 169. 2. G. 321. H. 393.

30. A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case. A. 183, 185. B. 168. G. 325. H. 393.

109. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands. A. 198. B. 250. G. 614. H. 396.

## NOMINATIVE.

21. The nominative is the case of the subject. A. 173. B. 166. G. 203. H. 387.

## ACCUSATIVE.

22. The direct object of a verb is put in the accusative. A. 237. B. 173. G. 328. H. 404.

261. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative. A. 256, 257. B. 181. G. 335, 336. H. 417.

340. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. A. 173. 2. B. 330, 331. G. 420. H. 414, 415.

<sup>1</sup> School edition.

<sup>2</sup> Revised edition.

360. With names of towns, the place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition. A. 258. *b*. B. 182. G. 337. H. 418.

### DATIVE.

23. The indirect object of a verb is put in the dative. A. 255. B. 187. G. 345, 348. H. 424.

35. The dative is used with **sum** to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. A. 231. B. 190. G. 349. H. 430.

375. Most verbs meaning to favor, please, believe, trust, help, and their opposites; also, to persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, and the like, are followed by the dative. A. 227. B. 187. II. *a*. G. 346. H. 426.

399. The end or purpose which an object serves may be denoted by the dative. A. 233. B. 191. G. 356. H. 433.

400. Many verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super** are followed by the dative. A. 228. B. 187. III. G. 347. H. 429.

456. The agent with the gerundive is expressed by the dative. A. 232. B. 189. G. 355. H. 431.

### GENITIVE.

149. A person or thing may be described by the ablative or the genitive of a noun, if an adjective be used with the noun. A. 215. B. 203. G. 365. H. 440. 3.

### ABLATIVE.

69. The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative. A. 248. c. I. B. 218. G. 401. H. 476.

78. The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. A. 246. B. 216. C. 401. H. 467.

89. The manner of an action is expressed by the ablative with **cum**, unless an adjective is used with the ablative, when **cum** may be omitted. A. 248. B. 220. G. 399. H. 473. 3.

137. Cause may be expressed by the ablative. A. 245. B. 219. G. 408. H. 475.

149. A person or thing may be described by the ablative or the genitive of a noun, if an adjective be used with the noun. A. 251. B. 224. G. 400. H. 473. 2.

174. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative. A. 256. B. 230, 231. G. 393. H. 486.

194. The ablative of specification is used to point out in what respect a statement is true. A. 253. B. 226. G. 397. H. 480.

222. The ablative is used with comparatives in the sense of "than" when **quam** is omitted. A. 247. B. 217. G. 398. H. 471.

370. **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor**, and their compounds, govern the ablative. A. 249. B. 218. 1. G. 407. H. 477. I.

418. Separation is expressed by the ablative, often without a preposition. A. 243. B. 214. G. 390. H. 461, 464.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

447. Commands are put in the imperative or subjunctive; appeals in the subjunctive. The negative is **nē**. A. 266, 269. B. 275, 281. G. 260, 263, 266-270. H. 559, 560.

438. An indirect question takes the subjunctive. A. 334. B. 300, 315. 1. G. 467. H. 649. II. 650.

### SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

411. A primary tense in the main clause is followed by the present or perfect subjunctive.

A secondary tense in the main clause is followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. A. 285, 286. B. 267. G. 509-511. H. 543-545.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

279. Purpose is expressed by **ut** and **nē** with the subjunctive. A. 317, 331. B. 282, 295, 296. G. 545-548. H. 568.

309. The result of an action is expressed by the subjunctive with **ut** and **ut nōn**. A. 319, 332. B. 284, 297. G. 551-553. H. 570, 571.

425. Relative clauses of purpose, result, cause, and characteristic take the subjunctive. A. 317. 2, 319. 2, 320. B. 282. 2, 284. 2, 283. G. 630, 631, 633. H. 590, 591. 1, 2, 592.

353. The subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is used after verbs of fearing; **ut** meaning "that not," and **nē** "that" or "lest." A. 331 f. B. 296. 2. G. 550. H. 567.

384. (**Cum**, temporal.) **Cum**, meaning "when," is followed by the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect, otherwise by the indicative. A. 325. B. 288, 289. G. 580, 585. H. 600.

427. (**Cum**, causal or concessive.) **Cum**, when it means "since" or "although," takes the subjunctive. A. 326. B. 286. 2, 309. 3. G. 586, 587. H. 598.

449. In indirect discourse, the subjunctive of appeals and commands remains a subjunctive.

The imperative is, in indirect discourse, changed to the subjunctive. A. 339. B. 316, 654, 652. H. 642.

413. The subordinate clauses of an indirect statement have their verbs in the subjunctive, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses. A. 336. 2. B. 314, 318. G. 508, 509. H. 643, 644.

443. II. Less vivid future conditions take the present subjunctive in both condition and conclusion. A. 307. 2. B. 303. G. 596. H. 576.

443. III. Conditions contrary to fact take the imperfect subjunctive when referring to present time, and the pluper-

fect subjunctive when referring to past time. A. 308.  
B. 304. G. 597. H. 579.

### THE INFINITIVE.

340. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.  
A. 173. 2. B. 330, 331. G. 420. H. 414, 415.

346. The tenses of the infinitive in indirect statements denote past, present, or future, relatively to the time denoted by the verb of saying. A. 336. A. B. 317. G. 530, 531.  
H. 617-620.

### INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

341. Statements after verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving are called Indirect Statements. A. 335, 336. B. 313, 314. G. 648. H. 641, 649.

413. The main verb of an indirect statement is put in the infinitive with subject accusative, and depends upon the verb or expression of saying, thinking, or perceiving. A. 336. 2.  
B. 314. G. 650. H. 642.

346. The tenses of the infinitive in indirect statements denote past, present, or future, relatively to the time denoted by the verb of saying. A. 336. A. B. 317. G. 530, 531.  
H. 617-620.

413. The subordinate clauses of an indirect statement have their verbs in the subjunctive, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses. A. 336. B. B. 318. G. 508, 509.  
H. 643, 644.

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

443. I. Simple conditional sentences take the indicative in both condition and conclusion. A. 306, 307. I. B. 302.  
G. 595. H. 574.

443. II. Less vivid future conditions take the present sub-



junctive in both condition and conclusion. A. 307. 2. B. 303. G. 596. H. 576.

443. III. Conditions contrary to fact take the imperfect subjunctive when referring to present time, and the pluperfect subjunctive when referring to past time. A. 308. B. 304. G. 597. H. 579.

### THE GERUNDIVE.

455. The gerundive is used with the verb **sum** to form the passive (or second) periphrastic conjugation, denoting obligation or duty. A. 113. *d.* I. 129. B. 115, 337. 7. G. 251. H. 621.

456. The agent with the gerundive is expressed by the dative. A. 232. B. 189. G. 215. 2, 355. H. 431.

# INDEX.

References are to paragraphs.

A.  
a, stem-vowel, 19, *d*.  
-a, 142, *a*; 431, 2.  
-ā, 431, 2.  
ā, ab., 78.  
ab-sum, 400, *b*.  
Ablative, 431, 2; Absolute, 403.  
    of Agent, 77; 78.  
    of Cause, 137; 431, 2.  
    with Comparatives, 223.  
    with certain Deponents, 370.  
    Descriptive, 149.  
    with *in*, 31.  
    of Manner, 89.  
    of Means or Instrument, 68;  
        69; 77, *a*; 431, 2.  
    of Separation, 418.  
    of Specification, 194.  
    of Time, 174.  
Accent, 8,  
Accusative; Direct Object, 16, 22.  
    with *in*, 38.  
    of Place Whither, 360.  
    of Time and Space, 261.  
    Subject of Infinitive, 340.  
ācer, 160.  
Active Periphrastic Conjugation,  
    453.  
Active Voice defined, 73, *a*.  
Action; completed, 359, *b*.  
    incompleted, 275.  
ad with Gerundive and Gerund,  
    392.  
Adjectives; 82, *a*; 89; 149, *a*;  
    169; 431, 1, 2.  
    Agreement of, 3, *a*; 16, *e*.  
    Comparing of; regular, 219;  
        220; 230; irregular, 228;  
        235; 237.

Adjectives; Demonstrative, 94;  
    100; 120; 121.  
    of First and Second Declen-  
        sions, 50; 51.  
    Interrogative, 114.  
    Irregular, 125.  
    Predicate, 52.  
    Possessive, 285.  
    Reason for terminations, 50, *b*.  
    of Third Declension, 160; 167.  
Adverbs; 230; comparing of, 249;  
    formation of, 242; 243.  
Agent; Ablative of, 77; 78.  
    Dative of, 456.  
ager, 56.  
Agreement; of adjectives, 13, *a*;  
    16, *c*; 50, *b*; of relative pro-  
        nouns, 109; of verbs, 63.  
aliquis, 124.  
alius, 125.  
Allied Words; Use explained, 131.  
altior, 221.  
Alphabet, 1.  
amāns, 358.  
amō, 73; 82.  
Antecedent, 108.  
Antepenult, 6, 3; 8, 3.  
*Appeal of Divitiacus*, 414.  
*Appeal of Gauls to Caesar*, 350.  
Appeals, 447; in indirect dis-  
    course, 449.  
Apposition, 27; 28.  
Article wanting, 13, *b*.  
-ās, 431, 2.  
audiō, 323.  
B.  
-bā, 188; 333.  
*Baculus Centuriō*, 315; 320.  
bonus, 50; 82, *a*.

## C.

- c; pronunciation of, 5.  
*Is Caesar an "Imperator"?* 463.  
*Caesar atque Classis Pompēi*, 170  
 (Introduction); 176; 183; 190;  
 196; 201.  
*Caesar et Afrānius*, 262 (Intro-  
 duction); 263; 270; 288; 293;  
 301; 306.  
*Caesar et Ariovistus*, 102, II.  
 Cardinal numerals, 296; 298.  
**capiō**, 258.  
**caput**, 130.  
 Cases; names of, 9.  
 Cause; Ablative of, 137; 431, 2;  
 Relative Clauses of, 423.  
**centum**, 298.  
**ch**; pronunciation of, 5.  
 Characteristic; Relative clauses  
 of, 424.  
 Clause; defined, 161, 1; main,  
 161, 2; subordinate, 161, 4;  
 274; 412; 450.  
**collis**, 147.  
 Commands; 447; in indirect dis-  
 course, 449; 450.  
 Common constructions, 431, 2.  
 Comparatives; how declined, 221;  
 meanings, 219; 223  
 Comparing; of Adjectives; regu-  
 lar, 219, 220; 230; irregu-  
 lar, 228; 235-237.  
 of Adverbs; 249.  
 Complementary Infinitive, 155;  
 position, 155, b.  
 Completed action, 410, a.  
 Compounds; defined, 6, a; gov-  
 erning Dative, 400.  
 Conditional Sentences, 443.  
 Conjugations; analysis of forms,  
 332.  
 Conjugation; First, 73; 82.  
 Second, 179; 186.  
 Third, 205; 210; in iō, 258.  
 Fourth, 323.  
 Periphrastic Active, 453;  
 Passive, 455.  
 Consonants; classification, 2;  
 double, 2, 3; pronunciation of,  
 5.

Contraction, 7, 4.

Contrary to fact conditions, 443,  
 III.

**cornū**; 199.

**cum**; causal and concessive, 427.

since, although, 427.

when, 384.

*Curiō in Africā*, 361 (Intro-  
 duction); 362; 365; 395; 432; 435.

**cursus**, 199.

## D.

Dative; with Adjectives, 20, c.

of Agent, 456.

with Compounds, 400.

of End or Service, 399.

of Indirect Object, 20; 23.

with some Intransitives, 374.

of the Possessor, 34; 35.

Declension; defined, 19.

Adjectives; First and Second

Declensions, 50; 51.

Third Declension, 160; 167.

Nouns:

First Declension; 19; by  
 endings, 19, e.

Second; 45; 56; by endings,  
 45, e.

Third; stem, 130; mute  
 stems, 130; 135; liquid  
 stems, 142; i-stems, 147;  
 153.

Fourth, 199.

Fifth, 266.

Demonstrative Adjectives, 94; 100.

Demonstrative Pronouns, 94; 120;  
 121.

Dentals, 2.

Deponent Verbs; 367; 368; gov-  
 erning Ablative, 370.

Descriptive Ablative or Genitive,  
 149.

**diēs**, 268.

Diphthongs, 4, 2; 7, 3, 4.

Direct Object, 16; 22; 431, 2.

Direct Questions, 437.

Discourse, Indirect; three forms of,  
 450.

Doer; expressed with Gerundive  
 by Dative, 456.

Double Consonants, 2; 3.

**duo**, 297.

Duration of Time, 261.

Duty; how expressed, 455.

**dux**, 130.

*Dying for his Men*, 461.

*Dying Standard Bearer*, 460.

## E.

**-e**; Vocative ending of Second Declension, 45, *a*.

**ego**, 283; 284.

Emphatic words; position of, 162.

End or Service; Dative of, 399.

Ending, 10, 2; 16, *a*; 39, *a*, *b*.

Endings; exhibited, 90; 190; 196;  
of first declension, 19, *e*; per-  
sonal, 76; 334; of second de-  
clension, 45, *e*; of verbs, 63.

English Method of Pronunciation, 3.

**exsul**, 142.

Extent of Space, 261.

## F.

**facilis**, 167.

**faciō**, passive of, 430.

**facultās**, 130.

*Faithful until Death*, 465.

Fearing; Subjunctive after Verbs  
of, 352.

**ferō**, 430.

Fifth Declension, 266.

*Fight Around a Hillock*, 214.

**fiō**, 430.

First Conjugation, 73; 82; 332.

First Periphrastic Conjugation,  
453.

Fourth Conjugation; 323; 332;  
imperfect Indicative, 335.

Fourth Declension, 199.

Future conditions, 443, I, II.

Future participle, 453.

Future tense, 408; tense sign, 333.

Future-perfect tense, 408.

## G.

**g**; pronunciation of, 5.

*Galli et Germānī*, 327.

Gender; 10; general rules, 3-5.

Genitive; 169; 130, *a*; 431, I.

Descriptive, 149.

of i-stems in Third Declen-  
sion, 147.

of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, 57.

Partitive, 299, *b*.

**gn**; 7, 5.

Gerund; 389; 391; of purpose,  
392.

Gerundive; 390; 391; in passive  
periphrastic conjugation, 455;  
of purpose, 392.

Grouping words, 169; 431, I.

**gu**, 4, I, *a*.

## H.

**h**, 7, 2.

*Hannibal et Scipiō*, 144, II; 151.

**hic**, 93; 94; 283, *b*.

Hints for reading Latin, 48; 169;  
431.

Hints for writing Latin, 84; 169.

**homō**, 142.

**hostis**, 147.

**huic**, 4, I, *a*.

Hyphens; used to group words,  
169, *a*; 170; 176; 183; 190;  
246; 251; 255.

## I.

**i**, I.

**-ibus**, 431, 2.

i-consonant, I; 5; 7, 5.

i-stems of third declension, 147;  
153; 154; 167, *b*; 242.

**idem**, 120; 121, *a*.

Imperfect Tense; Indicative; 408;  
of fourth conjugation, 335;  
tense sign, 188; 333.

Subjunctive; in contrary to  
fact conditions, 443, III;  
with **cum** when, 384; mean-  
ing, 274; 276; tense sign,  
333; when used, 277; 409;  
411.

**ille**, 93; 94; 283, *b*.

Imperative in commands, 447;  
449.

Impersonal construction; defined,  
457; with passive periphrastic  
conjugation, 457.

**in** ; with ablative, 31; with accusative, 38.  
*Incident at the Battle of Pharsalia*, 466.  
 Incompleted action, 275.  
 Indeclinable nouns, 10, 5.  
 Indefinite pronouns, 124.  
 Indicative mood; with **cum** *when*, 384.  
     Future tense signs, 333.  
     Imperfect tense; of fourth conjugation; 335; tense sign, 333.  
 Indirect Discourse; three forms of, 450.  
 Indirect Object, 20; 23.  
 Indirect Statements; 337, II-341; 344-346; 450.  
     Defined, 337, II, *a*; 338.  
     Full rule for, 413.  
     Tenses of Infinitive, 344-346.  
     Subordinate Clauses of, 412.  
 Indirect Questions, 437; 438.  
 Infinitive Mood; 75, *a*; 83; 169; 279, *a*; 431, 1; 446, *d*.  
     Complementary; 155; position, 155, *b*.  
     Future tense of deponents, 368, 1.  
     Subject Accusative, 340.  
     Tenses of; in indirect statements, 344-346.  
     Use, 336-341; 344-346; 413.  
 Interrogative; adjectives, 114; pronouns, 113; 114.  
 Instrument or means; Ablative of, 68; 69.  
 Intransitive verbs; with dative, 375; 400; defined, 374; 400, *a*.  
 -**iō**; Verbs in, 258.  
**ipse**, 120; 121, *c*.  
 Irregular adjectives, 125.  
**is**, 100-102; 283, *b*.  
 -**is**, 431, 2.  
**iste**, 120; 121, *a*, *b*.

## L.

Labials, 2, 1.  
*Labienus meets his match*, 464.  
**labor**, 142.

Less vivid future conditions, 443, II.  
**levis**, 167.  
*Licinius atque Claudius*, 132.  
 Liquids, 2, 2.  
 Liquid stems of third declension, 142.  
 List of Rules for ready reference, following the Vocabularies, 285.  
 Lists of Words for Review, 129; 203; 291; 433.  
**litus**, 142.  
 Locative case, 9, *a*.

## M.

-**m**, 431, 2.  
 Main clause, 161, 2, *b*.  
 Main verb; 161, 3; 275; 277; in indirect statements, 413.  
**mālō**, 379.  
 Manner; Ablative of, 89.  
**mare**, 147.  
 Means; Ablative of, 68; 69; 77, *a*; 431, 2.  
 Mental action; Verbs denoting, 338.  
**miles**, 135.  
*Miles et Tribūnus*, 144.  
**mille**, 297, 298.  
**moneō**, 179; 186.  
**mōns**, 153.  
**mūrus**, 45.  
 Mutes, 2, 1; 7, 6.  
 Mute stems of third declension, 130; 135.

## N.

**nd**, 7, 2.  
**nē**; in Negative Commands and Appeals, 447.  
     denoting Negative Purpose, 278, *b*; 279.  
     after Verbs of Fearing, 353.  
 -**ne**, 8, 4; 41.  
 Negative Commands and Appeals, 447.  
 Negative Purpose, 278, *b*; 279.  
 Negative Result, 308, *b*, 309.  
**nf**, 7, 5.  
 Neuter nominative and accusative, 130, *c*; 142, *a*.



Neuter nouns of second declension.  
44.

*nōlō*, 379; 446, *d*.

Nominative, 21; 431, 2.

*nōs*, 283.

Nouns; indeclinable, 10, 5; predicate, 29; 30.

*nox*, 153.

Numerals, 296-299; 304.

## O.

Obligation; how expressed, 455.

Object; direct, 16; 22; 431, 2;  
indirect, 20; 23.

Omission of subject, 39.

*oppidum*, 45.

*opus*, 142.

Order of words, 26; 162.

*-ōs*, 431, 2.

## P.

Palatals, 2.

Participles; 82, *a*; 357.

How declined, 358.

of Deponents, 368, 2.

Future active, 453.

Perfect passive, 359, *b*.

Present active, 359, *a*.

How used, 359.

Partitive Genitive, 299, *b*.

Parts; Principal, of verbs, 83; 212;  
330.

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation,  
455.

Passive Voice defined, 73, *b*.

*pater*, 142.

Penult, 6, 3; 8, 3.

Perfect Tense; Indicative, 408.

Participle, 359, *b*; 403, *g*.

Subjunctive; meaning, 410;  
use, 411.

Personal endings. 76; 334.

Personal pronouns, 283.

*pēs*, 135.

*ph*; how pronounced, 5.

*Pisō Aquitānus*, 208.

Place whither, 360.

Pluperfect Tense; Indicative, 408.

Subjunctive; with *cum*, *when*,  
384; meaning, 410; use, 411.

Plural; of adjectives, 13, *a*; of  
first declension, 12; of verbs,  
16, *b*.

*plūs*, 229.

Possessive Adjectives, 285.

Possessor; Dative of the, 34; 35.

*possum*, 313; 400, *b*.

*prae-ficiō*, 400, *c*.

*prae-mittō*, 400, *d*.

Predicate; adjectives, 52; nouns,  
29; 30.

Preposition; position of, 169; 431, 1.

Present Tense; Indicative, 408.

Participle, 359, *a*.

Subjunctive; meaning, 274, 2;  
276; tense sign, 333; when  
used, 277; 409; 411; in  
less vivid future conditions,  
443, II.

Primary tenses, 408.

*princeps*, 130.

Principal Clause, 161.

Principal Parts of Verbs, 83; 212;  
330.

*Proelium cum Helvētiis*, 157; 164.

*Proelium Mundae*, 326.

Pronouns; 100.

Demonstrative, 94; 120; 121.

Indefinite, 124.

Interrogative, 113; 114.

Personal and reflexive, 283.

Relative; 106; 107; agree-  
ment of, 108; 109.

Pronunciation; English, 3; Roman,  
3; 4; 5.

*puer*, 56.

*Puer et Amicus*, 118.

*Pūgna Pharsalica*, 245 (Introduc-  
tion); 246; 251; 255; 467.

*Pullō et Vorēnus*, 217.

Purpose; defined, 278, *a*; gerun-  
dive or gerund with *ad*, 392;  
relative clauses of, 422; sub-  
junctive of, 279; 337, *b*.

## Q.

*qu*, 4, 1, *a*.

*quam*, than; 222; with superla-  
tives, 439.

*-que*, 8, 4; 91.

Questions; direct, 437; indirect, 437; 438; 450.

quī, 106-109; 286; 422.

quīdam, 124.

quis, 113; 114.

quod, 114, *b*.

-quod, 124, *b*.

## R.

-re, 333.

Reading; Hints for, 84; 169; 431.

Ready reference; Rules arranged for, Following the Vocabularies.

regō, 205; 210.

Reflexive Pronouns, 283.

Relative clauses; 425; of cause, 423. of characteristic, 424. of purpose and result, 422.

Relative Pronouns; 106; 107; 161, 4; agreement of, 108; 109.

Result; Subjunctive of, 309; relative clause of, 422.

Review; Word-lists for, 129; 203; 291; 433.

*Romānī atque Gallī*, 90.

Rules of Syntax arranged for ready reference, Following the Vocabularies.

## S.

sapiēns, 167.

*Saving the Standard*, 225.

Second declension, 45; 56.

Second conjugation, 179; 186; 332.

Second periphrastic conjugation, 455.

Secondary tenses, 408.

Sequence of tenses, 411.

Separation; Ablative of, 418.

Service or end; Dative of, 399.

*Silva*, 19.

Simple conditions; nothing implied, 443. I.

Space; extent of, 261.

Specification; Ablative of, 194.

Statements; direct, 337, II. indirect, 337, II-341; 344-346; 413; 450.

Stem; defined, 19, *d*, *e*; of third declension, 130.

Stems of verbs, 83; 330.

Stem vowel; of first declension, 19, *d*; of second declension, 43.

Subject; 21; 26, *a*; 35; omitted, 39.

Syntax; Rules of, arranged for ready reference, Following the Vocabularies.

Subjunctive Mood; 274.

in Conditional Sentences, 443, II, III.

in Commands and Appeals, 447; 449.

with **cum** Causal or Concessive, 427.

with **cum** Temporal, 384.

in Indirect Discourse, 450;

Indirect commands, 449;

Indirect Questions, 438;

Indirect statements, 413.

of Purpose, 279.

in Relative Clauses; 425; of

cause, 423; of characteristic,

424; of purpose and result,

422.

of Result, 309.

after Verbs of Fearing, 353.

rule for Use of Tenses, 277; 409; 411.

Tenses of; present tense;

meaning, 274, 2; 276;

tense sign, 333; use, 277,

443, II.

imperfect tense; meaning;

274; 276; tense sign, 333;

use, 277; 443, III.

perfect and pluperfect tenses;

meaning, 410, *c*; use, 411.

Subordinate clauses; defined, 161;

in indirect statements, 413; 450.

Superlatives; how declined, 221, *b*.

meanings, 219; 223; with **quam**,

439.

**sui**, 283.

**sum**; 61; 67; 453; 454; position, 26, *b*.

**suus**, 191.

## T.

Tenses; primary and secondary,

408; sequence of, 411.

Tense signs, 188; 333.

-ter, 247.

"that" omitted in indirect statements, 337, II, c.

Third conjugation; 205; 210; 332; in *iō*, 258; 332.

Third declension; mute stems, 130; 135.

Liquid stems, 142.

i-stems, 147; 153.

Adjectives, 160; 167.

Three forms of indirect discourse, 450.

Time denoted by infinitive in indirect statements, 344; 345.

Time; ablative of, 174; accusative of, 261.

Towns; names of as place whither, 360.

*trēs*, 297.

*tū*, 283; 284.

#### U.

*ultima*, 6, 3.

Uniting or grouping words, 169; 431, I.

-um, 44.

*ūnus*, 297.

*urbs*, 153.

*ut*; of purpose, 278, *b*; 279; of

result, 308, *b*; 309; with verbs of fearing, 353.

*ūtor*, 370.

#### V.

*v*; pronunciation, 5.

*vēlōx*, 167.

Verb; main, 161, 3; position of, 26, *b*; 162; stems, 75, *a*; 83; 330.

Verbs; agreement of, 63; of mental action, 338; personal endings, 76; 334; plural of, 16, *b*; voice, 73, *a*, *b*.

*vir*, 56.

*virtūs*, 135.

Vivid, see Less vivid.

Vocative case, 45, *a*, *b*.

Voice; defined, 73, *a*, *b*.

*volō*, 379.

*vōs*, 283.

Vowels, 4, I; 7.

#### W.

Words; Lists of Allied Words explained, 131.

Word-lists for review, 129; 203; 291; 433.

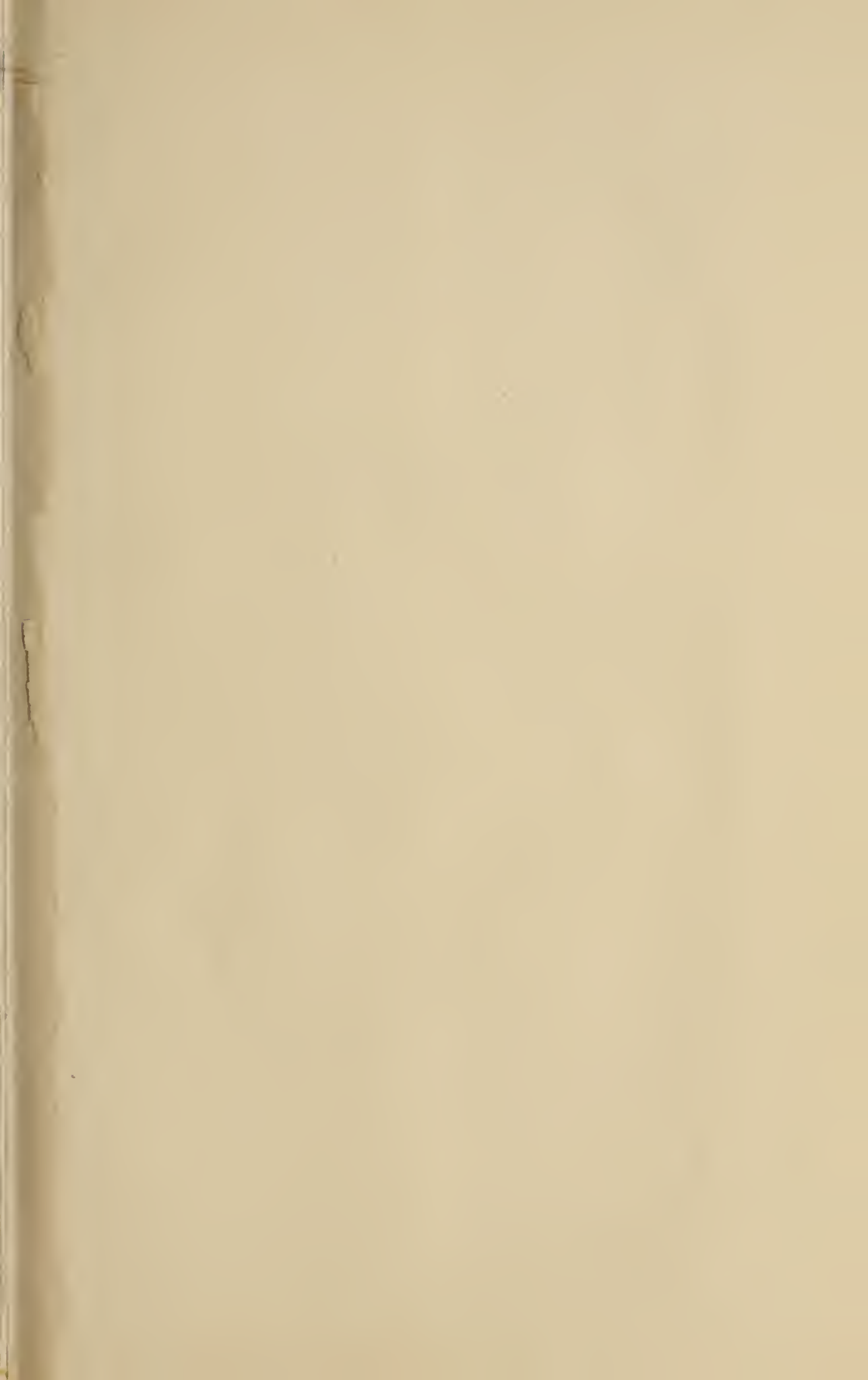
Word-order, 26; 162; 431, I.

Writing Latin; Hints for, 48.

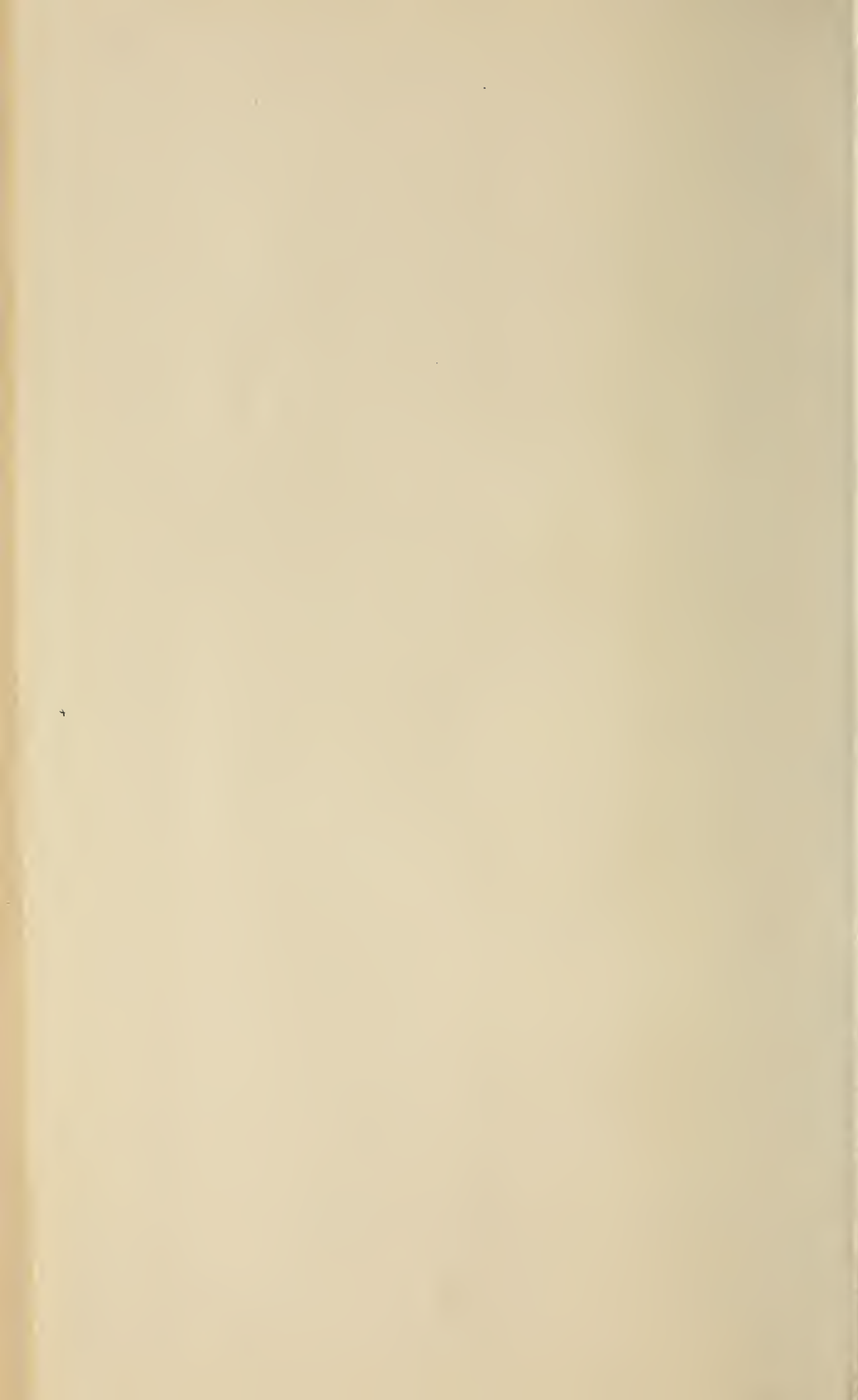
SEP 17 1901

he

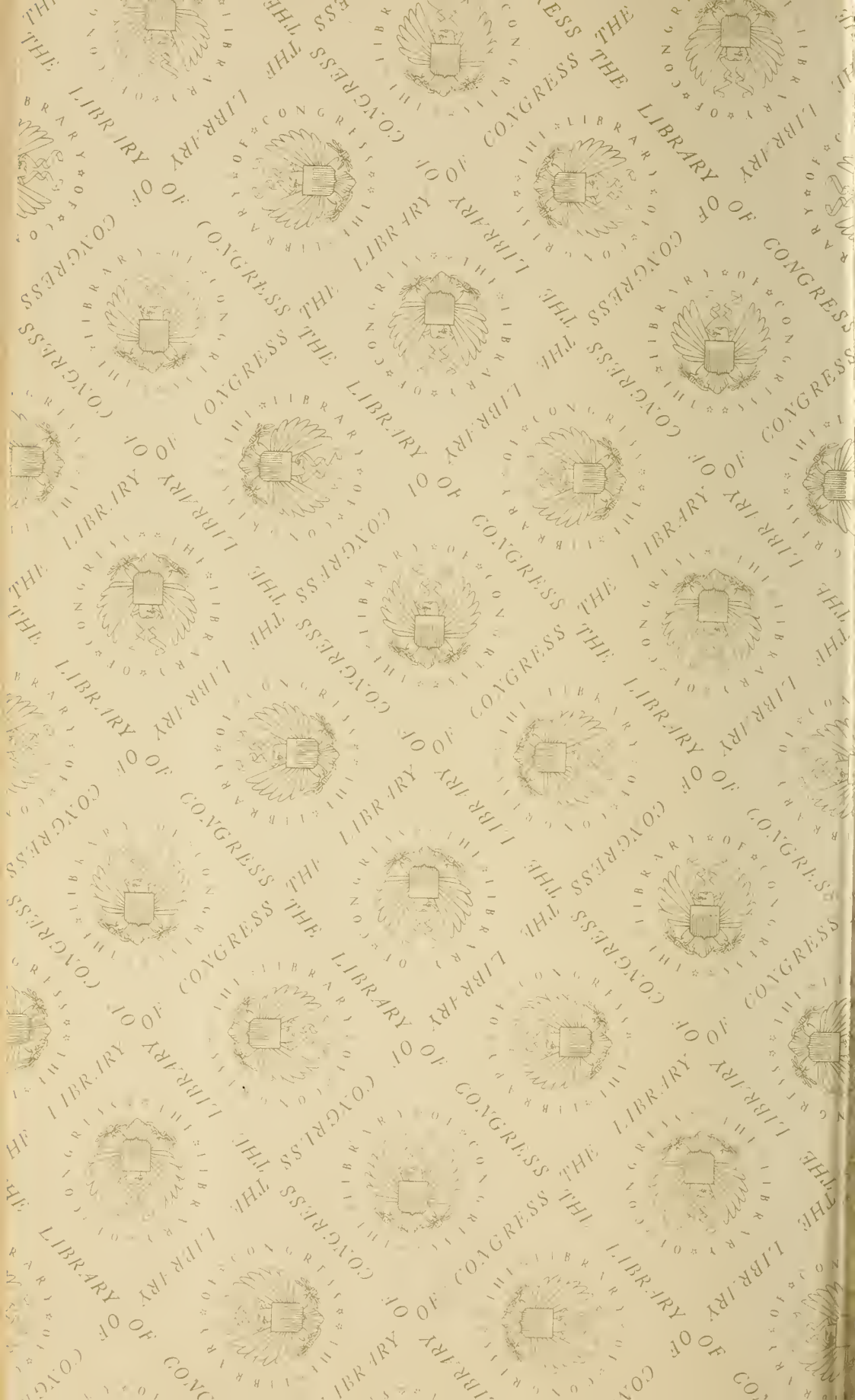
35-4006

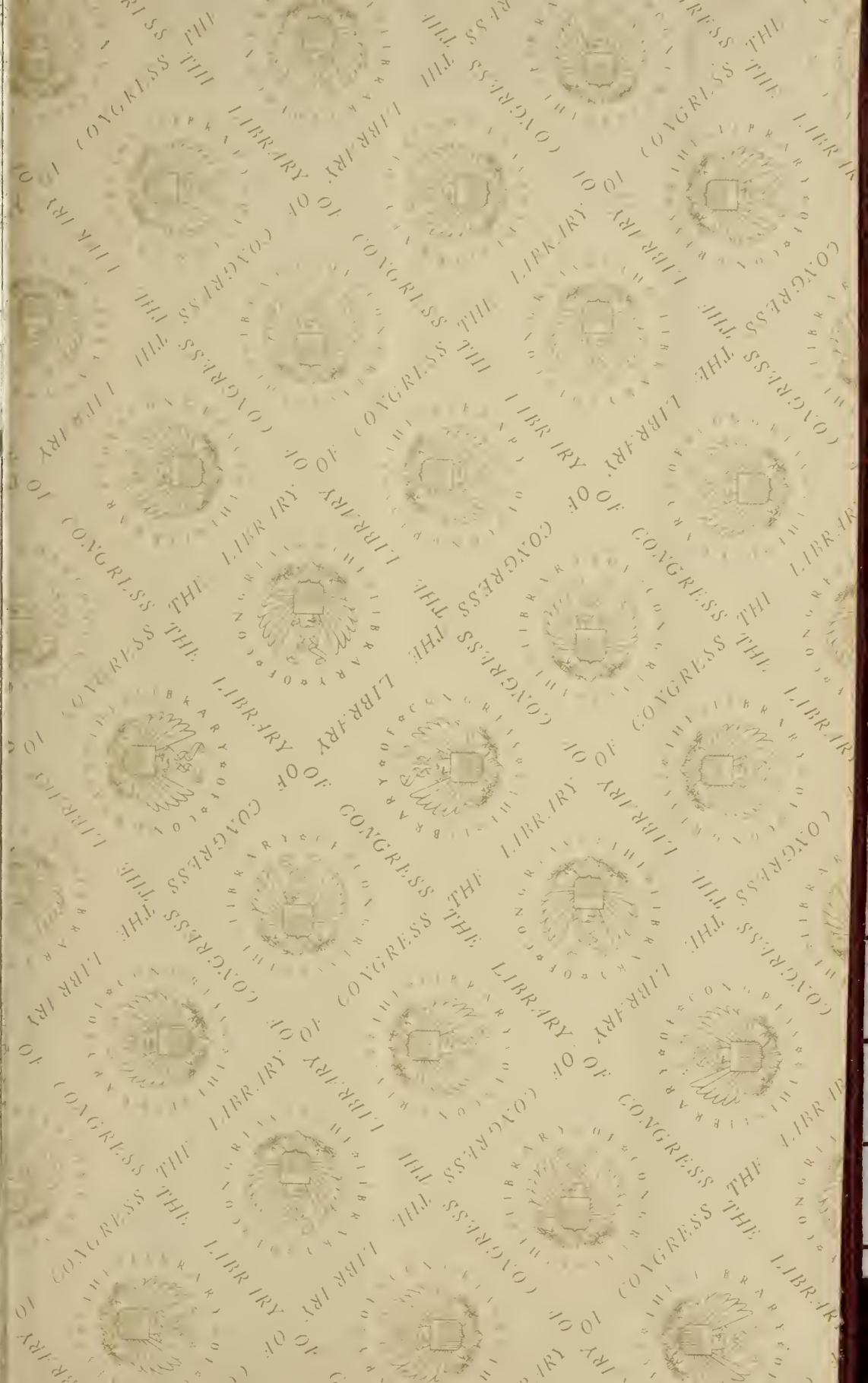












LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 005 823 869 7

